



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

3058

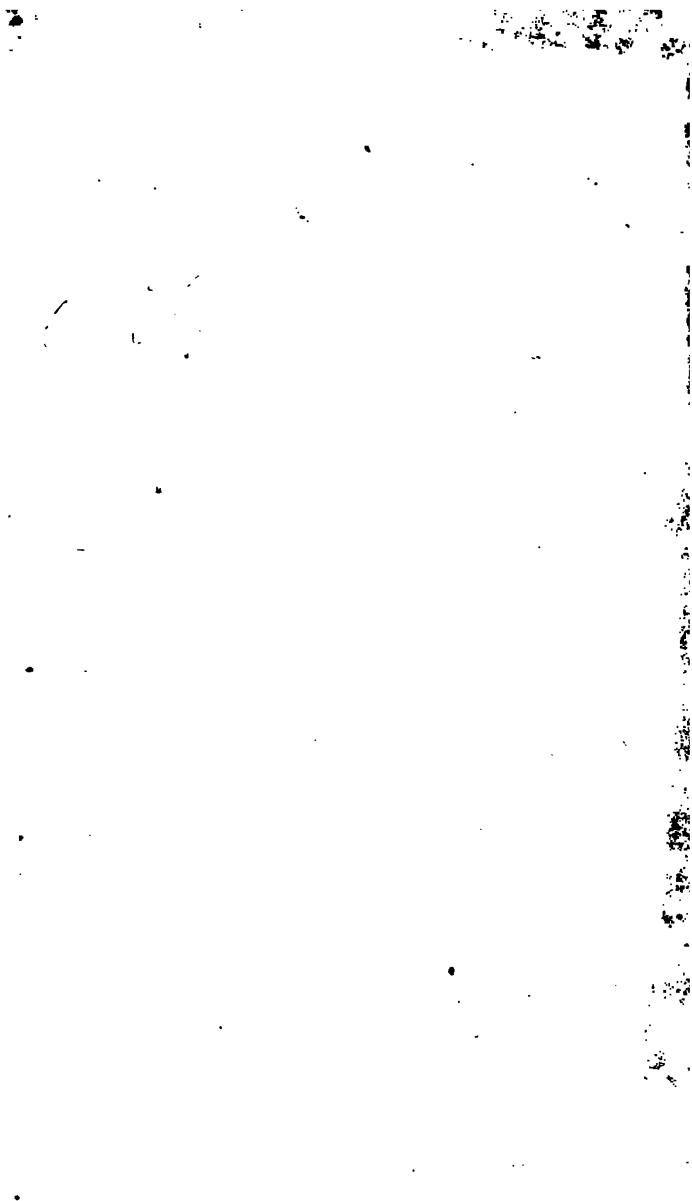
8 01

~~L. Jack~~

C. Ludway

Sep 16. 1823

3058 f. 97





ETON LATIN GRAMMAR,

OR

AN INTRODUCTION

TO

THE LATIN TONGUE;

WITH

EXPLANATORY NOTES, COLLECTED FROM VARIOUS GRAMMARIANS

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS.

ELEVENTH EDITION.

IN TENUI LABOR.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR LACKINGTON, HUGHES, HARDING, MAVOR, AND LEFARD
BALDWIN AND CO.; G. AND W. B. WHITTAKER; LONGMAN AND CO.
SCATCHERD AND CO.; J. RICHARDSON; T. BOOSEY AND SONS; J. ROBIN
SON; SIMPKIN AND MARSHALL; OGLE AND CO.; T. HAMILTON AND
WILLIAMS.

1822.

USEFUL KNOWLEDGE.

Lately Published, very neatly printed, Price Ninepence each, New Editions, greatly improved, of

DR. MAVOR'S CATECHISMS:

OR,

FIRST PRINCIPLES OF KNOWLEDGE AND INSTRUCTION FOR YOUNG CHILDREN OF EITHER SEX.

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.

The Mother's Nursery Catechism.—Catechism of English Grammar with Exercises in false Syntax and Orthography.—Catechism of Health, with Maxims for the Management, &c. of Children.—General Knowledge, a Brief Introduction to the Arts and Sciences.—History of England, to the present Day.—History of Scotland, Ireland, and Wales, to their respective Union with England. History of France to the Restoration of Louis XVIII.—History of Rome.—History of Greece.—Universal History.—Catechism of Geography, or Knowledge of the Globe and its Inhabitants.—Animated Nature, a History of Animals.—Botany, a description of Plants, Flowers, &c.—Biography of the most eminent Britons.—Catechisms of the Laws and Constitution of England; and Catechism of the Bible, or Sacred Truths.

* * * TO THE PUBLIC.—Since the first appearance of Dr. MAVOR's series of CATECHISMS on useful and important subjects, there have been several imitations of the general plan, and direct plagiarisms of the titles. His publishers consider this a compliment to a well-known and long-experienced writer for the instruction of Youth, rather than what was probably intended—an insidious attempt to foist off, under this disguise, works, which, in some cases, are neither sound in principles, nor correct in point of facts.

They refrain, however, from enlarging on this subject; and only respectfully request, that PARENTS and TEACHERS will give that preference which they may feel to be due to the sanctions of a real name; or, at least, that they will examine and compare, before they decide.

NEW AND IMPROVED EDITIONS are constantly in the Press; and a continuation of the original series, comprising other popular subjects, will be brought forward as occasion requires.

LONDON: printed for the Proprietors of MAVOR's ETON LATIN GRAMMAR, and sold by all other Booksellers throughout the United Kingdom.



Printed by A. APPLEGATH,
Duke-street, Stamford-street.

ADVERTISEMENT

TO THE FIRST EDITION.

THE Editor of the following work, after using the **ETON LATIN GRAMMAR** in his school for upwards of twenty years, and consequently becoming intimately acquainted with its merits and defects, conceived the idea of compiling and publishing an **APPENDIX**, consisting of explanatory *Notes* and other useful *Additions* to that valuable and popular **INTRODUCTION**: A large impression, however, of the **APPENDIX** having been sold off, and its credit being sufficiently established to warrant a second, it struck the compiler, that he might have it in his power to confer a still more acceptable service on masters and pupils, if he published a **CORRECT EDITION** of the **ORIGINAL**, and threw his former little work into the form of *Notes*, so as to meet the eye of the young scholar in connection with the text.

In accomplishing this object, he has been studious to unite brevity with utility—neither to perplex the student with unnecessary explanations, nor to omit what experience taught him was essential to be known. And in order to remove every objection to the use of this edition, he begs leave to observe, that he does not recommend the *Notes* to be committed to the memory, but only to be read over once a month; so that the pupil may be able to refer to them with promptness and facility, whenever occasion requires. Youth, indeed, have already enough to learn by heart; and their entrance on Latin, which generally takes place at a very early age, cannot be rendered too easy and smooth, in order to encourage their further progress. A boy, however, who has made himself completely master of the common

Eton Grammar, when he comes to construing and parsing, will find himself ignorant of many particulars, which it does not enable him to explain; and his master must either take upon himself the trouble of supplying deficiencies by oral instruction, or leave his pupil to pick up what he wants, from larger and more elaborate works on the subject, which perhaps are not within his reach, even if he were qualified to understand them. Hence the utility of this plan appears so obvious, that it would be offering an insult to the understanding of teachers to recommend it by argument.

The Editor has therefore only to add, that the utmost pains have been taken to exhibit the text of the Eton Latin Grammar, in its greatest purity—an object of no small importance, when it is considered how many incorrect editions are obtruded on the public; and that his publishers by means of a clear type, and a superior paper, have rendered the work as pleasing to the eye as could be expected in a publication of this nature, where the expense, of necessity, was to be kept within moderate bounds, from the competition it has to encounter with *cheap* but *inaccurate* impressions of the same ORIGINAL.

The sale of TEN very large impressions, within a few years, of the ETON Latin Grammar, with Notes, for the Use of Schools, is the best evidence of the continued patronage of the public, and the estimation in which the work is held. It is probable that the Eton Greek Grammar may soon appear in a similar form, which has long been wanted. In offering a new and revised edition of the present Work, the Editor has thought proper to add a brief account of the Roman Calendar, with Rules for turning Roman into English time, which he hopes will be found useful to youth; to whose instruction he early devoted his labours, and for whose welfare and proficiency in sound learning his best wishes shall be breathed while

W. MAJOR.

Rectory, Woodstock, August 1, 1822.

THE
ETON LATIN GRAMMAR.*

THE Latin Letters are thus written :

Capitals.

A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V X Y Z.

Small, or Common.

a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v x y z.

Of these Letters, six are named Vowels, *a, e, i, o, u, y*.
The rest are called Consonants.

A vowel makes a full and perfect sound of itself, as *e*.

A consonant cannot sound without a vowel, as *be*.

Consonants are divided into mutes, liquids, and double
* letters.

The liquids are *l, m, n, r*; the double letters are *j, x, z*.

The remaining letters are called mutes. *K, Y, Z*, are
found only in words originally Greek.

* GRAMMAR teaches us to speak, or write, any language properly and correctly.

Grammar consists of four parts, *Orthography, Etymology, Syntax, and Prosody*.

ORTHOGRAPHY treats of letters, with the proper division of words and sentences. It is the art of spelling.

ETYMOLOGY treats of the several kinds of words or parts of speech, with their accidents and formations.

SYNTAX teaches the construction of words into sentences, according to their several relations to each other; and consists of two parts, *Concord and Government*.

PROSODY instructs us in the quantity of syllables, and their arrangement in versification.

A syllable is a distinct sound of one or more letters pronounced in a breath.

A diphthong is the sound of two vowels in one syllable.

Of diphthongs there are five in number, *au, eu, ei, æ, oe*.

These two last are commonly pronounced as the vowel *e*, and are often joined and written thus : *æ, œ*.

THE PARTS OF SPEECH are Eight :

1. Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle ; declined.
2. Adverb, Conjunction, Preposition, Interjection ; undeclined.

OF A NOUN.

A NOUN is the name of whatsoever Thing, or Being, we see, or discourse of.

Nouns are of two kinds, substantives and adjectives. A noun substantive declares its own meaning, and requires not another word to be joined with it, to show its signification ; and has commonly *a, an, or the*, before it : as *homo*, a man ; *angelus*, an angel ; *liber*, the book.

A noun adjective always requires to be joined with a substantive, of which it shows the nature, or quality : as *bonus puer*, a good boy ; *malus puer*, a naughty boy.

NUMBERS OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have two numbers ; the singular and the plural.

The singular speaketh but of one ; as *pater*, a father.

The plural speaketh of more than one ; as *patres*, fathers.

CASES OF NOUNS.

NOUNS have six cases in each number :

The nominative, the genitive, the dative, the accusative, the vocative, and the ablative.

The nominative case cometh before the verb, and answereth to the question *who ?* or *what ?* as *who teaches ?* *magister docet*, the master teaches.

The

The genitive case is known by the sign *of*,* and answereth to the question *whose?* or *whereof?* as, *whose learning?* *doctrina magistri*, the learning *of* the master, or, the master's learning.

The dative case is known by the signs *to* or *for*, and answereth to the question *to whom?* or *to* or *for what?* as, *to whom do I give the book?* *do librum magistro*, I give the book *to* the master.

The accusative case followeth the verb, and answereth to the question *whom?* or *what?* as, *whom do you love?* *amo magistrum*, I love the master.

The vocative case is known by calling or speaking to; as, *o magister*, o master.

The ablative case is known by prepositions, expressed or understood, serving to the ablative case; as *de magistro*, of the master; *coram magistro*, before the master.

Also, the prepositions *in*, *with*, *from*, *by*; and the word *than*, after the comparative degree; are signs of the ablative case.

GENDERS AND ARTICLES.

GENDERS of nouns are three: the masculine, the feminine, and the neuter.

ARTICLES are used in Grammar to denote the gender of nouns, and are thus declined:

	Singular.				Plural.		
	Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.		Masc.	Fœm.	Neut.
Nominative	<i>Hic</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Nom.	<i>Hi</i> ,	<i>hæ</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
Genitive	<i>Hujus</i> ,			Gen.	<i>Horum</i> ,	<i>harum</i> ,	<i>horum</i> ,
Dative	<i>Huic</i> ,			Dat.	<i>His</i> ,		
Accusative	<i>Hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> ,	Acc.	<i>Hos</i> ,	<i>has</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,
Vocative	—			Voc.	—		
Ablative	<i>Hoc</i> ,	<i>hac</i> ,	<i>hoc</i> .	Abl.	<i>His</i> .		

Nouns declined with two articles are called common,

* The Genitive Case in *English* is frequently expressed by the Letter *s*, with an Apostrophe, in this manner '*s*'; as *my father's son*, that is, *the son of my father*.

that is, are of the masculine and feminine gender: as, *hic* and *hæc parens*, a parent, father or mother.

Nouns are called doubtful, when declined with the article *hic* or *hæc*; as *hic* or *hæc anguis*, a snake.

Some nouns are also called epicene: *that is*, when under one article both sexes are signified; as, *hic passer*, a sparrow; *hæc aquila*, an eagle; both male and female.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS SUBSTANTIVE.

THERE are FIVE declensions of substantives, distinguished by the ending of the genitive case.*

THE first declension † makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *æ*; as,

	Singular.		Plural.
N. <i>hæc</i>	Mus-a, a song,	N. <i>hæ</i>	Mus-æ, songs,
G. <i>hujus</i>	Mus-æ, of a song,	G. <i>harum</i>	Mus-ârum, of songs,
D. <i>huic</i>	Mus-æ, to a song,	D. <i>his</i>	Mus-is, to songs,
A. <i>hanc</i>	Mus-am, a song,	A. <i>has</i>	Mus-as, songs,
V. <i>ô</i>	Mus-a, o song,	V. <i>ô</i>	Mus-æ, o songs,
A. <i>ab hæc</i>	Mus-â, from a song.	A. <i>ab his</i>	Musis, from songs.

THE

* Most cases in the singular number, and all in the plural, are formed from the genitive case singular.

† 1. Seven nouns in the first declension make *abus* rather than *is* in the dative and ablative plural: *anima, dea, equa, filia, liberta, mula, nata*; to distinguish them from the masculines *animus, deus, &c.*

2. The genitive of this declension anciently ended in *as*, which *familia* still retains, when joined to *pater* and *mater*; as *pater familiâs, patris familiâs, &c.*

3. Three terminations from the Greek belong to this declension; as, *es, e*, and are thus declined:

N. <i>hic</i> Æneas,	N. <i>hic</i> Anchises,	N. <i>hæc</i> Epitome,
G. Æneæ,	G. Anchisæ,	G. Epitomes,
D. Æneæ,	D. Anchisæ,	D. Epitome,
A. Æneam, v. -an,	A. Anchisen,	A. Epitomen,
V. Ænea,	V. Anchise,	V. Epitome,
Ab. Æneâ.	Ab. Anchisc, v. â.	Ab. Epitoma.

Nouns in *stes* make *sta* in the vocative; as *Thyestes, Thyesta*.

4. To this declension belong patronymics in *des*, as *Peïlides*; with these proper

THE second declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *i*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Magist-er, a master,	N. <i>hi</i> Magistr-i, masters,
G. <i>hujus</i> Magistr-i, of a master,	G. <i>horum</i> Magistr-orum, of masters,
D. <i>huic</i> Magistr-o, to a master,	D. <i>his</i> Magistr-is, to masters,
A. <i>hunc</i> Magistr-um, a master,	A. <i>hos</i> Magistr-os, masters,
V. <i>ô</i> Magist-er, o master,	V. <i>ô</i> Magistr-i, o masters,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Magistr-o, by a master.	A. <i>ab his</i> Magistr-is, by masters.

Obs. I. The nominative and vocative cases of nouns are for the most part alike, in both numbers : And when the nominative case singular of the second declension ends in *us*, the vocative ends in *e*; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Domin-us, a lord,	N. <i>hi</i> Domin-i, lords,
G. <i>hujus</i> Domin-i, of a lord,	G. <i>horum</i> Domin-orum, of lords,
D. <i>huic</i> Domin-o, to a lord,	D. <i>his</i> Domin-is, to lords,
A. <i>hunc</i> Domin-um, a lord,	A. <i>hos</i> Domin-os, lords,
V. <i>ô</i> Domin-e, o lord,	V. <i>ô</i> Domin-i, o lords,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Domin-o, by a lord.	A. <i>ab his</i> Domin-is, by lords.

Obs. II. *Deus*, God, maketh *ô Deus* in the vocative

proper names, *Acésites*, *Achétes*, *Agyrtes*, *Antiphates*, *Boótes*, *Butes*, *Laértes*, *Leucátes*, *Menátes*, *Philoctétes*, *Polítes*, *Procrustes*, *Thersítes*, *Thyétes*, *Zetes*: also names of jewels and wines: as *achátes*, *aromatítes*. Other nouns in *es* are of the third.

* 1. Nouns of the second, ending in *er*, lose *e* in declining; as *liber*, a book, *libri*; except eight, *adulter*, *gener*, *puer*, *presbyter*, *socer*, *Mulciber*, *Liber*, the god Bacchus, and *liberi*, children.

2. *Deus* in the plural is thus declined; *hi dei*, v. *dii*; *deorum*, v. *deum*; *deis*, v. *dii*; *deos*: *dei*, v. *dii*; *deis*, v. *dii*.

3. The poets sometimes use *us* instead of *e* in the vocative; as *fluvius*, *fluvius*, *Patricius*, &c. This is after the Attic manner.

4. Greek nouns in *os* and *on* sometimes preserve their original form, instead of taking *us* and *um*; as *Delos*, *Ilion*; and have *o* instead of *i* in the genitive; as *Androgeos*, G. *Androgeo*, v. *Androgei*, D. *Androgeo*, A. *Androgeon*, v. *um*, &c. *Athos*, G. D. Ab. *Atho*, A. *Atho*, v. *Athon*.

5. Nouns from the Greek, ending in the diphthong *eus*, are of the second and third declension; as *hic Orpheus*; G. *ei*, v. *eos*; D. *eo*, v. *ei*; A. *eum*, v. *ea*; V. *eu*; Ab. *eo*.

6. Proper names in *es* of the third take sometimes the same form: as *Achilles*, v. *Achilleus*; G. *Achillis*, v. *Achillei*, v. *Achilleos*.

case singular : *Also*, the proper name of a man ending in *ius* makes *i* ; as *Georgius*, *George*, Voc. *Georgi*. In like manner, *filius*, a son, maketh *fili*, and *genius*, a genius, *geni*.

Obs. III. Nouns of the neuter gender are generally of the second and third declension ; and make the nominative, the accusative, and the vocative cases alike, in both numbers ; and in the plural number these cases end all in *a* ; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hoc</i> Regn-um, a kingdom,	N. <i>hæc</i> Regn-a, kingdoms,
G. <i>hujus</i> Regn-i, of a kingdom,	G. <i>hor</i> Regn-orum, of kingdoms,
D. <i>huic</i> Regn-o, to a kingdom,	D. <i>his</i> Regn-is, to kingdoms,
A. <i>hoc</i> Regn-um, a kingdom,	A. <i>hæc</i> Regn-a, kingdoms,
V. <i>ô</i> Regn-um, o kingdom,	V. <i>ô</i> Regn-a, o kingdoms,
A. <i>abhoc</i> Regn-o from a kingdom.	A. <i>ab his</i> Regn-is, from kingdoms.

THE third declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *is* ; as,

Singular

* GENERAL RULES.

1. Neuters of the third in *e*, *al*, *ar*, make *i* in the ablative singular, *ia* in the nominative plural, and *ium* in the genitive : as *rete*, *animal*, *calcar*.

2. But *far*, *par*, *jubar*, *nectar*, *hepar*, with towns in *e*, as *Præneste*, are regular in the ablative.

3. Nouns ending in *es* or *is*, not increasing in the genitive, make *ium* ; as *nubes*, *vallis* : except these six, *vates*, *canis*, *juvenis*, *panis*, *volucris*, and the plural nouns *apes*.

4. Monosyllables of the third ending in *as*, and in *s* or *x* after a consonant, make *ium* in the genitive plural ; as *mas*, *mons*, *merx*.

IRREGULARS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

5. In the ACCUSATIVE and ABLATIVE. The names of rivers, cities, and gods ending in *is*, take *im*, and sometimes *in*, in the accusative, and *i* in the ablative ; as *Tybris*, *Bætis*, *Bilbilis*, *Serapis*. Note—*Bætis* makes also *Bate* ; *Tybris*, *Tigre*, in the ablative.

6. Eleven common nouns also make *im* in the accusative, and *i* in the ablative ; *Buris*, *vis*, *sindapis*, *cucumis*, *amussis*, *ravis*, *sitis*, *tussis*, *mephitis*, *gunmis*, and *cannabis*, which also makes *cannabe* in the ablative.

7. Nine take *im* or *em* in the accusative, and *i* or *e* in the ablative : *aquidilis*, *clavis*, *lens*, *pelvis*, *febris*, *puppis*, *sementis*, *turris*, *navis*.

8. These four also, *restis*, *cutis*, *securis*, *strigilis*, have two accusatives, but in the ablative make *reste*, *cute*, *secûri*, *strigili*.

9. In the ABLATIVE. The names of months, though regular in the accusative, make *i* only in the ablative ; *Aprilis*, *Aprilî* ; *Octôber*, *Octôbrî*.

10. Nouns

to Singular.

N. *hæc* Nub-es, a cloud,
G. *hujus* Nub-is, of a cloud,
D. *huic* Nub-i, to a cloud,
A. *hanc* Nub-em, a cloud,
V. *ô* Nub-es, o cloud,
A. *ab hæc* Nub-e, from a cloud.

Plural.

N. *hæ* Nub-es, clouds,
G. *harum* Nub-ium, of clouds,
D. *his* Nub-ibus, to clouds,
A. *has* Nub-es, clouds,
V. *ô* Nub-es, o clouds.
A. *ab his* Nub-ibus, from clouds.

Many

10. Nouns formed of adjectives of two endings make only *i*; as *bipennis*, *molaris*, *cautlis*; Except from this rule, *rudis*, *juvenis*, making *e*; and *familicis*, *natâlis*, *rivâlis*, *sodâlis*, *volucris*, making *e* or *i*, but generally *i*.

11. The following nouns make *e* or *i* indifferently; *finis*, *occiput*, *rus*, *supelles*, *tridens*, *pugil*, *vigil*; and towns signifying AT a place, as *Carthaginæ*, or *Carthagini*: These *e* or *i*, but rather *e*; *amnis*, *anguis*, *avis*, *civis*, *classis*, *fustis*, *ignis*, *imber*, *orbis*, *postis*, *sors*, *unguis*; and a few others, by poetic licence.

12. In the GENITIVE PLURAL. To nouns making *ium* in the genitive plural, add words of more than one syllable in *us*; *cliens*, *infans*, *adolescens*; but substantives as well as adjectives and participles frequently admit of a syncope; as *adolescentum*, *infantum*, *cadentum*, &c. and *parens* properly makes *parentum*.

13. These nouns, *caro*, *cohors*, *cor*, *cos*, *dos*, *fauz*, *glis*, *lar*, *linter*, *lis*, *nox*, *noz*, *os ossis*, *Quiris*, *Samnis*, *uter*, *venter*, and *vis*, make *ium* in the genitive plural; add the compounds of *as*, as *sestans*.

14. *Bos* makes *boum*, and in the dative and ablative *bobus* and *bubus*. *Alas*, and the plural noun *cœlites*, make *uin* and *uum*.

15. GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD, increasing impure, that is, in *is* after a consonant, are sometimes thus declined.

Sing.

N. *Arcas*,
G. *Arcadis*, v. *ados*,
D. *Arcadi*,
A. *Arcadem*, v. *ada*,
V. *Arcas*,
Ab. *Arcade*.

Plur.

N. *Arcades*,
G. *Arcadum*,
D. *Arcadibus*,
A. *Arcades*, v. *adas*,
V. *Arcades*,
Ab. *Arcadibus*.

Add *Minos*, *Tros*, *heras*, though increasing pure, i. e. in *is* after a vowel; so *lampas*, *aspis*, *delphin*, and many more. But *Pan* makes *Panos*, Ac. *Pana*, seldom *Panis* and *Panem*. *Aer*, *æther*, and several other nouns, make the accusative most generally in *a*.

16. Greek names of men in *is* are thus formed: *hic Daphnis*; G. *idis*, v. *idos*; *idi*; *im*, v. *in*, sometimes *idem*; *i*; *ide*.

17. Greek names of women are thus formed: *hæc Phillis*;—*idis*, v. *idos*;—*idi*;—*ida*, v. *idem*, never *im* or *in*;—*i*; *ide*: so *chlamys*. But some names of cities make *im*; as *Aulis*, *Elis*, Ac. *ida*, *idem*, v. *im*.

18. Greek nouns, in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, if they

do

Many nouns of this declension increase in the genitive case ; as in the following examples :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Lap-is, a stone,	N. <i>hi</i> Lapid-es, stones,
G. <i>hujus</i> Lapid-is, of a stone,	G. <i>horum</i> Lapid-um, of stones,
D. <i>huic</i> Lapid-i, to a stone,	D. <i>his</i> Lapid-ibus, to stones,
A. <i>hunc</i> Lapid-em, a stone,	A. <i>hos</i> Lapid-es, stones,
V. <i>ô</i> Lap-is, o stone,	V. <i>ô</i> Lapid-es, o stones,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Lapid-e, with a stone.	A. <i>ab his</i> Lapid-ibus, with stones.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hoc</i> Op-us, a work,	N. <i>hæc</i> Oper-a, works,
G. <i>hujus</i> Oper-is, of a work,	G. <i>horum</i> Oper-um, of works,
D. <i>huic</i> Oper-i, to a work,	D. <i>his</i> Oper-ibus, to works,
A. <i>hoc</i> Op-us, a work,	A. <i>hæc</i> Oper-a, works,
V. <i>ô</i> Op-us, o work,	V. <i>ô</i> Oper-a, o works,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Oper-e, from a work.	A. <i>ab his</i> Oper-ibus, from works.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> } Pa-rens, a parent,	N. <i>hi</i> } Parent-es, parents,
et <i>hæc</i> }	et <i>hæc</i> }
G. <i>hujus</i> Parent-is, of a parent,	G. <i>horum</i> Parent-um, of parents,
D. <i>huic</i> Parent-i, to a parent,	et <i>har.</i> }
A. <i>hunc</i> } Parent-em, a parent,	D. <i>his</i> Parent-ibus, to parents,
et <i>hanc</i> }	A. <i>hos</i> } Parent-es, parents,
V. <i>ô</i> Pa-rens, o parent,	et <i>has</i> }
A. <i>ab hoc</i> } Parent-e, by a parent.	V. <i>ô</i> Parent-es, o parents,
et <i>hæc</i> }	A. <i>ab his</i> Parent-ibus, by parents.

do not increase in the genitive, or, if they increase pure, *i. e.* in *os* after a vowel, take this form : Sing. N. *hæc hæresis* ; G. *is*, v. *ios*, v. *eos* ; D. *i* ; A. *im*, v. *in* ; V. *i* ; Ab. *i*. Sing. N. *hæc chelys* ; G. *yos* ; D. *yi* ; A. *ym*, v. *yn* ; V. *y* ; Ab. *ye*, v. *y*. So are declined the names of cities in *polis* : as *Pentapolis* ; also *Atys*, *basis*, *cidaris*, *crisis*, *Cotys*, *metamorphosis*, *poësis*, *syntaxis*, *synthesis*, and others.

19. Greek nouns always throw away *s* in the vocative ; as *Chreme*, *Achille*, *Palla*, the proper names of men.

20. Greek nouns make *um* in the genitive plural, except those in *is* making *ios* or *eos* in the genitive singular, which take *ium*, sometimes *eon* ; as *diaccesium*, *metamorphoseon*.

21. Greek nouns in *ma*, as *arôma*, *epigramma*, oftener take *tis* than *ibus* in the dative and ablative plural.

THE fourth declension* makes the genitive case singular to end in *ūs* ; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hic</i> Grad- <i>us</i> , a step,	N. <i>hi</i> Grad- <i>us</i> , steps,
G. <i>hujus</i> Grad- <i>ūs</i> , of a step,	G. <i>horum</i> Grad- <i>uum</i> , of steps,
D. <i>huic</i> Grad- <i>ui</i> , to a step,	D. <i>his</i> Grad- <i>ibus</i> , to steps,
A. <i>hunc</i> Grad- <i>um</i> , a step,	A. <i>hos</i> Grad- <i>us</i> , steps,
V. <i>ō</i> Grad- <i>us</i> , o step,	V. <i>ō</i> Grad- <i>us</i> , o steps,
A. <i>ab hoc</i> Grad- <i>u</i> , with a step.	A. <i>ab his</i> Grad- <i>ibus</i> , with steps.

THE fifth declension† makes the genitive and dative cases singular to end in *ei* ; as,

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>hæc</i> Faci- <i>es</i> , a face,	N. <i>hæ</i> Faci- <i>es</i> , faces,
G. <i>hujus</i> Faci- <i>ei</i> , of a face,	G. <i>harum</i> Faci- <i>erum</i> , of faces,
D. <i>huic</i> Faci- <i>ei</i> , to a face,	D. <i>his</i> Faci- <i>ebus</i> , to faces,
A. <i>hanc</i> Faci- <i>em</i> , a face,	A. <i>has</i> Faci- <i>es</i> , faces,
V. <i>ō</i> Faci- <i>es</i> , o face,	V. <i>ō</i> Faci- <i>es</i> , o faces,
A. <i>ab hac</i> Faci- <i>e</i> , from a face.	A. <i>ab his</i> Faci- <i>ebus</i> , from faces.

* 1. To the fourth declension belong nouns ending in *u*, indeclinable in the singular, as *cornu*, *genu*, *veru*. The plurals are thus formed : N. *cornua*, G. *cornuum*, D. *cornibus*, A. *cornua*, V. *cornua*, Ab. *cornibus*.

2. Eight nouns make *ubus* in the dative and ablative plural ; *acus*, *arcus*, *artus*, *locus*, *partus*, *quercus*, *specus*, *tribus* ; three *ibus* and *ubus* ; *portus*, *genu*, *veru*.

3. GREEK NOUNS in *o* are thus declined : *hæc Manto* ; G. *hæ* ; D. *o* ; A. *o* ; V. *o* ; Ab. *o*. So *Echo*, *Erato*, *Suppho*, and many more. *Dido* takes also the Latin form ; as *Dido*, G. *Didonis*, v. *Didæ* ; *Juno* belongs to the third declension, and has only *Junonis*.

4. The sacred name *JESU* is thus declined : G. *JESU*, D. *JESU*, A. *JESU*, V. *JESU*, Ab. *JESU*.

† 1. All nouns of this declension want the plural, except *res* and *dies*, which are entire ; and *species*, *spes*, *facies*, *effigies*, which have only the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

2. Some other nouns of the fifth may probably have plural cases, though they are not commonly found in any good authors now extant. *Facies* is declined with all the cases, to show the long increase of the genitive.

DECLENSION OF NOUNS ADJECTIVE.

A NOUN adjective* is declined with three termina-

* GENERAL RULES.

1. Adjectives are of three declensions.
2. The first declension hath three terminations; as *bonus, bona, bonum*; and is like the first and second declensions of substantives.
3. The second hath two terminations; as *hic et hæc tristis, hoc triste*; and is wholly of the third declension of substantives.
4. The third hath only one termination; as *hic, hæc, hoc felix*; and is also like the third declension of substantives.
5. The second declension of adjectives makes the ablative singular in *i* only; the third in *e* or *i*; and both make the neuter plural in *ia*; and the genitive in *ium*; except comparatives and a few others.

FIRST DECLENSION.

6. Adjectives in *er* of the first declension lose *e* in declining; as *ater, atra, atrum*; except *tener, alter, asper,exter, gibber, lacer, liber, miser, prosper, and Iber* increasing long. And the compounds of *fero* and *gero*; as *opifer, laniger*. *Deuster* makes *dextera*, or *dextra*, but rather *dextra*.

7. *Cæter* is not read in the masculine singular, but in all other cases is entire.

SECOND AND THIRD DECLENSION.

8. Eleven adjectives have three endings in the nominative and vocative, but are like *tristis*, in the rest: *acer, alacer, celer, celebr, volucer, saluber, campester, pedester, equester, paluster, sylvester*; as *hic acer, v. acris, hæc acris, hoc acris*.

9. Several adjectives declined like *felix* make *e* only in the ablative, and *um* in the genitive plural; *cælebs, compos, dives, horpes, impos, impubes, pauper, pubes, sospes, superstes*; also compounds of *color, corpus*, and *pes*; as *concolor, tricorpor, tripes*.

10. *Par* and *memor* have only *i* in the ablative; but *compar, impar, dispar*, make *e* or *i*.

11. COMPARATIVES and *vetus*, make *a*, not *ia*, in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter.

12. Adjectives making *i*, or *e* and *i*, in the ablative, make *ium* in the genitive plural; except *celer, consors, compar, dispar, impar, inops, memor, supplex, vetus, vigil, uber*. Add COMPARATIVES, and compounds from *capió, facio, caput, genus*; as *præceps, artifex, particeps, degener. Locuples* makes *um* and *ium*.

13. Adjectives ending in *er, or, es, os*, have no neuter plural; as *pauper, memor, dives, compos*. Also *pubis, impubis, supplex, comis, inops, vigil, sons, insons, redus, intercus*, and a few others; except *habes, teres*, and adjectives in *er* of three endings; as *pedester*.

14. *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, and feminine and neuter in the plural.

15. *Plus* is thus declined: N. *hoc plus*, G. *pluris*, D. *caret*, A. *plus*, V. *plus*, Ab. *plurc*. Plur. N. *hi et hæc plures, hæc plura*, G. *plurium*, D. *pluribus*, A. *plures et plura*, Ab. *pluribus*. *Pluria* is sometimes used in the neuter plural for *plura*, and *plurum* for *plurium*.

tions,

tions, as *bonus*, good; *tener*, tender: or with three articles, as in the following examples:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Bon-us,	bon-a,	bon-um,	N. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
G. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-i,	G. Bon-órum,	bon-árum,	bon-
D. Bon-o,	bon-æ,	bon-o,	D. Bon-is,		[órum,
A. Bon-um,	bon-am,	bon-um,	A. Bon-os,	bon-as,	bon-a,
V. Bon-e,	bon-a,	bon-um,	V. Bon-i,	bon-æ,	bon-a,
A. Bon-o,	bon-â,	bon-o.	A. Bon-is.		

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Tene-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum,	N. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
G. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ri,	G. Tene-rórum,	tene-rárum,	
D. Tene-ro,	tene-ræ,	tene-ro,	D. Tene-ris,		[tene-rórum,
A. Tene-rum,	-ræm,	-rum,	A. Tene-ros,	tene-ras,	tene-ra,
V. Tene-er,	tene-ra,	tene-rum,	V. Tene-ri,	tene-ræ,	tene-ra,
A. Tene-ro,	tene-râ,	tene-ro.	A. Tene-ris.		

Obs. The masculine and neuter genders of adjectives are declined like nouns substantive of the second declension; and the feminine gender, like nouns of the first declension.

Unus, one; *solus*, alone; *totus*, the whole; *nullus*, none; *alter*, the other; *uter*, whether of the two; and other adjectives, make the genitive case singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*; as,

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Un-us,	un-a,	un-um,	N. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
G. Un-ius,			G. Un-órum,	un-árum,	un-órum,
D. Un-i,			D. Un-is,		[rum,
A. Un-um,	un-am,	un-um,	A. Un-os,	un-as,	un-a,
V. Un-e,	un-a,	un-um,	V. Un-i,	un-æ,	un-a,
A. Un-o,	un-â,	un-o.	A. Un-is.		

Note. *Unus* has no plural number, unless it be joined to a noun that has not the singular number; as *unæ litteræ*, a letter; *una mænia*, a wall.

In like manner is declined *alius*, another; which makes *aliud* in the neuter gender singular number.

A NOUN

A NOUN adjective of three articles is declined after the third declension of substantives; as *tristis*, sad; *melior*, better; *felix*, happy.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i>	} Trist-is, hoc trist-e,	N. <i>hi</i>	} Trist-es, hæc trist-ia,
et <i>hæc</i>		et <i>hæ</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Trist-is,	G. <i>hor.</i>	} Trist-ium,
D. <i>huic</i>	Trist-i,	har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Trist-em, hoc trist-e,	D. <i>his</i>	Trist-ibus,
et <i>hanc</i>		A. <i>hos</i>	} Trist-es, hæc trist-ia,
V. <i>ô</i>	Trist-is, et trist-e,	et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	} Trist-i,	V. <i>ô</i>	Trist-es, et trist-ia,
<i>hæc, hoc,</i>		A. <i>ab his</i>	Trist-ibus.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i>	} Meli-or, hoc meli-us,	N. <i>hi</i>	} Meli-ores, hæc meli-ora,
et <i>hæc</i>		et <i>hæ</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Meli-oris,	G. <i>hor.</i>	} Meli-orum,
D. <i>huic</i>	Meli-ori,	har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Meli-orem, hoc meli-us,	D. <i>his</i>	Meli-oribus,
et <i>hanc</i>		A. <i>hos</i>	} Meli-ores, hæc meli-ora,
V. <i>ô</i>	Meli-or, et meli-us,	et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	} Meli-ore, vel meli-hæc, hoc, } ori.	V. <i>ô</i>	Meli-ores, et meli-ora,
<i>hæc, hoc,</i>		A. <i>ab his</i>	Meli-oribus.

Singular.		Plural.	
N. <i>hic</i> ,	} Fel-ix,	N. <i>hi</i>	} Feli-ces, hæc feli-cia,
<i>hæc, hoc</i>		et <i>hæ</i>	
G. <i>hujus</i>	Fel-icis,	G. <i>hor.</i>	} Feli-cium,
D. <i>huic</i>	Fel-ici,	har. <i>hor.</i>	
A. <i>hunc</i>	} Feli-cem, hoc fel-ix,	D. <i>his</i>	Feli-cibus,
et <i>hanc</i>		A. <i>hos</i>	} Feli-ces, hæc feli-cia,
V. <i>ô</i>	Fel-ix,	et <i>has</i>	
A. <i>ab hoc</i> ,	} Feli-ce, vel feli-ci.	V. <i>ô</i>	Feli-ces, et feli-cia,
<i>hæc, hoc</i>		A. <i>ab his</i>	Feli-cibus.

Ambō, both, and *duo*, two, are nouns adjective; and are thus declined in the plural number only:

Nom.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	both,
Gen.	Amb-orum,	amb-arum,	amb-orum,	of both,
Dat.	Amb-ibus,	amb-ibus,	amb-ibus,	to both,
Acc.	Amb-os,	amb-as,	amb-o,	both,
Voc.	Amb-o,	amb-æ,	amb-o,	both,
Abl.	Amb-ibus,	amb-ibus,	amb-ibus,	with both.

COMPARISON

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.*

ADJECTIVES have three degrees of signification, or comparison.

I. The positive ; which denotes the quality of a thing absolutely, as *doctus*, learned ; *brevis* short.

II. The comparative ; which increases or lessens the quality, as *doctior*, more learned ; *brevior*, shorter, or more short.

And it is formed of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *or*, in the masculine and feminine genders, and *us*, in the neuter : as of

Doctus, gen. *docti*, is formed *hic et hæc doctior*, *hoc doctius*, more learned ; of

Brevis, dat. *brevi*, is formed *hic et hæc brevior*, *hoc brevius*, shorter, or more short.

III. The superlative ; which increases or diminishes

* COMPARISON IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE.

1. Adjectives in *dicus*, *volus*, *ficus*, *loquus*, make *entior* and *entissimus* ; as *maledicus*, *benevolus*, *munificus*, *multiloquus*. Except *mirificus*, *mirificentior*, *mirificentissimus*, vel *mirificentissimus*.

2. To irregulars, add *dexter*, *dexterior*, *dextimus* ; *sinister*, *sinisterior*, *sinistimus* ; *posterus*, *posterior*, *postrémus* ; *vetus*, *veterior*, *veterrimus* ; *maturus*, *maturior*, *maturrimus*, and *maturissimus*.

3. To those wanting the POSITIVE, add *citerior*, *citimus* ; *deterior*, *deterri-mus* ; *interior*, *intimus* ; *ocyor*, *ocyssimus* ; *potior*, *potissimus*.

4. To those wanting the COMPARATIVE ; add *bellus*, *bellissimus* ; *diversus*, *diversissimus* ; *fidus*, *fidissimus* ; *inclytus*, *inclytissimus* ; *invictus*, *invictissimus* ; *invictus*, *invictissimus* ; *meritus*, *meritissimus* ; *mellitus*, *mellitissimus* ; *novus*, *novissimus* ; *nuperus*, *nuperrimus* ; *par*, *parissimus* ; *persuasus*, *persuasissimus* ; *sacer*, *sacerrimus*.

5. To those wanting the SUPERLATIVE, add *adolescens*, *adolescentior* ; *ingens*, *ingentior* ; *diurnus*, *diurnior* ; *pronus*, *promior* ; *satur*, *saturior* ; *opimus*, *opimior*. Add most adjectives in *ilis* and *alis*, having the penultima long, and in *bilis* ; as *civilis*, *civilior* ; *capitális*, *capitator* ; *flexibilis*, *flexibilior*. Add also *arcinus*, *declivis*, *proclivus*, *longinquus*, *propinquus*.

6. The following want the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE ; *anterior*, *sequior*, *satior*.

7. Participles in *rus* and *dus*, adjectives in *bundus*, *inus*, *inus*, *orus*, *icus*, and in *us* after a vowel, WANT COMPARISON ; as *amaturus*, *amándus*, *pu-dibundus*, *legitimus*, *matutinus*, *canorus*, *modicus*, *vacuus*, and many others. But *assiduus*, *assiduisimus* ; *pius*, *piissimus* ; *strenuus*, *strenuissimus* ; and several more, are read.

the

the signification, or comparison, to the greatest degree; as *doctissimus*, most learned; *brevissimus*, the shortest or most short.

And it is formed also of the first case of the positive that endeth in *i*, by adding thereto *ssimus*; as of

Gen. *docti*, is formed *doctissimus*, most learned.

Dat. *brevi*, is formed *brevissimus*, shortest, or most short.

Note, Many adjectives vary from these general rules, and form their comparison irregularly; as,

Bonus, good; *melior*, better; *optimus*, best.
Malus, bad; *pejor*, worse; *pessimus*, worst.
Magnus, great; *major*, greater; *maximus*, greatest.
Parvus, little; *minor*, less; *minimus*, least.
Multus, much; *plus*, more; *plurimus*, most.
Dives, rich; *ditior*, more rich; *ditissimus*, most rich.
Nequam, wicked; *nequior*, more wicked; *nequissimus*, most wicked.

Externus, outward; *exterior*, more outward; *extremus*, vel *extimus*, uttermost, or most outward.

Inferus, low; *inferior*, lower, or more low; *infimus*, vel *imus*, lowest, or most low.

Superus, high; *superior*, higher, or more high; *supremus*, vel *summus*, highest, or most high.

Intus, inward; *interior*, more inward; *intimus*, innermost, or most inward.

Juvenis, young; *junior*, younger, or more young.
Senex, old; *senior*, older, or more old.
Prior, former; *primus*, first.
Proptior, nearer; *proximus*, nearest, or most near.
Uterior, farther; *ultimus*, last.—With some others.

Adjectives ending in *er*, form the superlative degree from the nominative case, by adding *rimus*; as of *pulcher*, fair, *pulcher-rimus*, fairest, or most fair.

Adjectives ending in *lis*, form the superlative degree according to the general rule; as of *utilis*, useful, Dat. *utili*, is formed *utili-ssimus*, most useful.

Except the following, which change *is* into *limus*; as, *Agil-is*, nimble; *agil-limus*, nimblest, or most nimble.
Facil-is, easy; *facil-limus*, easiest, or most easy.

Gracil-is,

Gracil-is, slender ; *gracil-linus*, slenderest, or most slender.
Humil-is, low ; *humil-linus*, lowest, or most low.
Simil-is, like ; *simil-linus*, likest, or most like.

Also, If a vowel comes before *us* in the nominative case of an adjective, the comparison is made by *magis*, more; and *maximè*, most : as,

Pius, godly ; *magis pius*, more godly ; *maximè pius*, most godly.

OF A PRONOUN.*

A PRONOUN is used instead of a noun, and is declined with number, case, and gender.

There are fifteen pronouns.

<i>Ego</i> , I ;	<i>ipse</i> , himself ;	<i>suus</i> , his ;
<i>tu</i> , thou or you ;	<i>iste</i> , that ;	<i>noster</i> , ours ;
<i>ille</i> , he ;	<i>hic</i> , this ;	<i>vester</i> , yours ;
<i>is</i> , he ;	<i>meus</i> ; mine ;	<i>nostras</i> , of our country ;
<i>sui</i> , of himself ;	<i>tuus</i> , thine ;	<i>vestras</i> , of your country.

To these may be added their compounds, *egomet*, I myself ; *tute*, thou thyself ; *idem*, the same ; also the relative *qui*, who, or what ; and *cujas*, of what country.

* 1. Pronouns express three persons : the speaker, *ego* ; the person to whom we speak, *tu* ; and the persons of whom, or the thing of which, something is spoken, *ille*, *illa*, *illud*.

2. These compounds are REGULAR ; *egomet*, *tutemet*, *G. tuimet*, &c. *ego ipse*, *tu ipse*, *sui ipsius*, *quisque*, *unusquisque*, *quisquam*, *quisnam*, *quispiam*, *quicquid*, *quilibet*, *quicumque*.

3. The following are IRREGULAR ; N. *istic*, *istæc*, *istoc*, v. *istuc* ; Ab. *istoc*, *istæc*, *istoc* ; so *illic* ; *hic* has all the cases having *c* or *s* before the particle *ce* ; and *hicine*, all the cases having *c* before *cine*. *Siquis* and *ecquis* make *quæ* or *qua*.

4. These are monoptots, or have only one case ; N. *tute* ; G. *cujusce*, *cujusce*, *hujus-modi*, *cjus-modi*, *cujus-modi*, or *hujusce-modi*, &c. Ac. *tete*, *seæ* ; *eccum*, *eccam* ; *eccos*, *eccas* ; *illum*, *ellam* ; *ellos*, *ellas* ; Ab. *pte* is put after the ablatives, *med*, *tud*, *sud*, *nostrâ*, *vestrâ*, and sometimes after their masculines ; as *medpte*, *meôpte*. Also *cum* is put after *me*, *te*, *se*, *quo*, *quâ*, *qui*, and *quibus* ; as *tecum*, &c.

DECLENSION

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

Ego, tu, sui, are pronouns substantive, and are thus declined:

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. Ego,	I,	Nom. Nos,	we,
Gen. Mei,	of me,	Gen. Nostr-um,	vel-i, of us,
Dat. Mihi;	to me,	Dat. Nobis,	to us,
Acc. Me,	me,	Acc. Nos,	us,
Voc. —		Voc. —	
Abl. Me,	from or by me.	Abl. Nobis,	from or by us.

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. Tu,	thou or you,	Nom. Vos. ye or you,	[you,
Gen. Tui,	of thee or you,	Gen. Vestr-um,	vel-i, of ye or
Dat. Tibi,	to thee or you,	Dat. Vobis,	to ye or you,
Acc. Te,	thee or you,	Acc. Vos,	ye or you,
Voc. o Tu,	o thou or you,	Voc. o Vos,	o ye,
Abl. Te,	with thee or you.	Abl. Vobis,	with ye or you.

Sui, of himself, herself, themselves, itself, has no nominative or vocative case, and is thus declined:

Singular and Plural.	
Gen. Sui,	of himself,
Dat. Sibi,	to himself,
Acc. Se,	himself,
Abl. Se,	by himself,

} herself, themselves, &c.

Ille, he; *illa*, she; and *iste*, that; are thus declined:

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. Ille,	ill-a,	ill-ud,	N. Ill-i,	ill-æ,	ill-a,
G. Ill-ius,			G. Ill-orum,	ill-arum,	ill-orum,
D. Ill-i,			D. Ill-is,		
A. Ill-um,	ill-am,	ill-ud,	A. Ill-os,	ill-as,	Ill-a,
V. —			V. —		
A. Ill-o,	ill-â,	ill-o.	A. Ill-is.		

In like manner is also declined *ipse*, he himself; except that the nominative and accusative cases singular make *ipsum* in the neuter gender.

Is, he, she, or that ; and *qui*, who ; are thus declined :

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. <i>Is</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	Nom. <i>Ii</i> ,	<i>eæ</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Gen. <i>Ejus</i> ,			Gen. <i>Eórum</i> ,	<i>eárum</i> ,	<i>eórum</i> ,
Dat. <i>Ei</i> ,			Dat. <i>Iis</i> ,	<i>vel eis</i> ,	
Acc. <i>Eum</i> ,	<i>eam</i> ,	<i>id</i> ,	Acc. <i>Eos</i> ,	<i>eas</i> ,	<i>ea</i> ,
Voc. —			Voc. —		
Abl. <i>Eo</i> ,	<i>eâ</i> ,	<i>eo</i> .	Abl. <i>Iis</i> ,	<i>vel eis</i> .	

In like manner also is declined its compound *idem*, the same ; as, Nom. *idem*, *eadem*, *idem*, Gen. *ejusdem*, &c.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	Nom. <i>Qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
Gen. <i>Cujus</i> ,			Gen. <i>Quorum</i> ,	<i>quarum</i> ,	<i>quorum</i> ,
Dat. <i>Cui</i> ,			Dat. <i>Quibus</i> ,	<i>vel queis</i> ,	
Acc. <i>Quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	Acc. <i>Quos</i> ,	<i>quas</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
Voc. —			Voc. —		
Abl. <i>Quo</i> ,	<i>quâ</i> ,	<i>quo</i> ,	Abl. <i>Quibus</i>	<i>vel queis</i> .	

In like manner also are declined its compounds, *quidam*, a certain one ; *quivis*, *quilibet*, any one ; *quicunque*, whatsoever.

Quis, *quæ*, *quid*, or *quod*, who, or what, is declined like *qui* ; as are also *aliquis*, and other compounds of *quis* ; these for the most part make the feminine gender of the nominative case singular, and the neuter of the nominative and accusative cases plural, in *qua*.

Quisquis, whosoever ; is thus declined :

Nom. <i>Quisquis</i> ,	<i>quidquid</i> ,	or <i>quicquid</i> ,
Acc. <i>Quidquid</i> ,	or <i>quicquid</i> ,	
Abl. <i>Quoquo</i> ,	<i>quaquâ</i> ,	<i>quoquo</i> .

Meus, *tuus*, *suus*, are declined like *bonus*, except that *meus* makes *mi* in the vocative case singular masculine ; and *tuus*, *suus*, with many other pronouns, have no vocative case.

Nostras, *vestras*, and *cujas*, are declined, Nom. *nostras*, Gen. *nostratis*, like *felix*.

OF A VERB.

A VERB* is the chief word in every sentence, and expresses either the *Action*, or *Being*, of a thing.

Of VERBS there are two VOICES.

1. The active, ending in *o*, as *amo*, I love.
2. The passive, ending in *or*, as *amor*, I am loved.

Of verbs ending in *o*; some are actives transitive, as *vinco*, I conquer: and these by changing *o* into *or* become

* 1. Though verbs are generally distributed into *active*, *passive*, *neuter*, and *deponent*, grammarians have adopted other distinctions; as *frequentatives*, *inceptives*, and *meditatives*: the *first* signify frequent action, as *vocito*, to call often; the *second*, gradual increase, as *calesco*, to grow hot. and the *third*, desire, as *desiro*, to desire to eat.

2. Five verbs in *o* have a passive sense, and are called *neuter-passives*; *exulo*, *fio*, *liceo*, *vapulo*, *veneo*.

3. The potential mood carries in it the force of *debeo*, *possum*, or *velo*, with an infinitive.

4. The infinitive mood is by some called a verbal noun.

5. The proper and precise use of some of the *tenses* depends on niceties, which can be acquired only by studying the best authors: but the following observations may be of use.

OBSERVATIONS ON THE TENSES.

A present action is put in the present tense.

A past action, spoken of as contemporary with something past, takes the imperfect tense; as *ludebam cùm magister venit*.

It also notes the custom of doing a thing: as *observabam, servulos rogabatam*: Ter. *Avo puerum Astyanacta trahebat*: Vir.

An action *absolutely* past takes the perfect; for which the present too is often used, especially in poetic language.

The pluperfect speaks of a thing past as done *before*, and in reference to, something else past; as *postquam id audierat, nunquam cuiquam verbum fecit*: Ter.

But after *postquam*, *posteaquam*, *antequam*, and also after *ubi* and *ut* used for *postquam*, the perfect is commonly used for it: as *Hi, postquam in unamania convenire, facillè coaluerunt*: Sal. *Hæc ubi dicta dedit, montem impulit in latus*: Vir. After *cùm* it should have been *convenissent*, *dedisset*.

A future action is put in the future tense.

The future, potential, belongs sometimes to the indicative, and is then called the perfect or second future, and speaks of a future action supposed to have been done previous to something else that is future: as *si te equo animo ferre accipiet, negligentem feceris*: Ter.

The

come verbs passive; as *vincor*, I am conquered; some are named neuters and intransitives, as *gaudeo*, I am glad; and these are never made passives.

Some verbs ending in *or* are called deponents, and have an active signification, as *loquor*, I speak; and some few are neuters, as *glorior*, I boast.

Note 1. That verbs neuter ending in *or*, and verbs deponent, are declined like verbs passive; but with gerunds and supines, like verbs active.

2. A verb is called transitive when the action passes

The present, potential, is often used for the imperative; sometimes also the perfect and future are so used: as *ne id dicas*; *ne respexeris*; *illi viderint*.

The perfect, potential, is put for the present, in certain weak forms of denying or affirming; as *crediderim*, I am inclined to believe; *haud affirmaverim*, I can scarce affirm; also for the future; as *si te inde excimerim*, *ego pro te molam*: Ter.

The pluperfect, subjunctive, has a future sense with the signs, *would* or *should*; when the future action spoken of in the correspondent clause supposes this to take place before; as *Helvetios ibi futuros, ubi Cæsar constitisset*; Cæs. Sometimes it corresponds with the clause of the present tense; as *quasi pollui consulatum credebat, si cum homo novus adeptus foret*. Sal.

Sum, joined to the passive participle, perfect, speaks of a thing *immediately or indefinitely past*; *fui*, a thing past a good while ago. as *præsum*, *præsum* *fui*.

Sum, joined to the future in *rus*, often serves for the future active, to signify intention: as *dicturus sum*, I will speak. Joined to the future in *mus*, it serves for the passive future, and signifies duty or necessity: as *hæc mihi dicenda sunt*, these things *shall* or *must* be mentioned by me.

The future passive, infinitive, formed with *iri*, is the supine, and therefore remains unchanged, contrary to the form of other constructions; as *usurum non datum iri*: Ter.

6. It may be observed that, except in their characteristics, the four conjugations vary little from each other in their terminations: the future indicative of the first two ends in *bo*, of the last two in *am*; the present potential of the first ends in *em*, of the last three in *am*; the second person singular of the imperative of the first ends in *a*; of the second and third in *e*; and of the fourth in *i*. The present of the indicative varies in all the conjugations in its inflection.

7. In conjugating, observe verbs have three radical parts; the PRESENT, PERFECT, and SUPINE, from which all other parts are derived: as from

AM-O, -abam, -abo, -a, -ato, -em, -arem, -are, -andi, ando, -andum, -ans, -andus.

AMAV-I, -eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -issee.

AM-ATUM, -atus, -aturus.

on to the noun following, as *vinco te*, I conquer thee; *veneror Deum*, I worship God.

3. A verb is called intransitive, or neuter, when the action does not pass on, or require a following noun; as *curro*, I run; *glorior*, I boast.

4. Verbs that have different persons are called verbs personal; as *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest.

And such as have not different persons are called verbs impersonal; as *tædet*, it irketh; *oportet*, it becometh.

OF MOODS.

THERE are five moods; the indicative, imperative, potential, subjunctive, and the infinitive.

The indicative mood either declareth a thing positively, as *ego amo*, I do love; or asketh a question, as *amas tu*, dost thou love?

The imperative mood commandeth, or entreateth, as *veni huc*, come hither; *parce mihi*, spare me; it is also known by the sign *let*; as *eamus*, let us go.

The potential mood signifies *power* or *duty*; and is commonly known by these signs, *may*, *can*, *might*, *would*, *could*, *should*, or *ought*; as *amem*, I may love, *amavissem*, I should have loved; and the like.

The subjunctive mood differs from the potential, only as it is subjoined to another verb going before it in the same sentence, and has evermore some conjunction or indefinite word joined to it; as *eram miser cum amarem*, I was a wretch when I loved; *nescio qualis sit*, I know not what sort of a man he is.

The infinitive mood has neither number, person, nor nominative case before it; and is known commonly by this sign, *to*; as *amare*, to love.

OF GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

VERBS have three gerunds, ending in *di*, *do*, *dum*, which have commonly an active signification, as *amandi*, of loving; *amando*, in loving; *amandum*, to love.

The

The supines of verbs are two ;

The one ending in *um*, which signifies actively, as *en amátum*, I go to love.

The other ending in *u*, and hath, for the most part, a passive signification: as *difficilis amátu*, hard to be loved.

OF THE TENSES OF VERBS.

IN Verbs there are five tenses, or times, expressing an action or affirmation: the present, the preterimperfect, the preterperfect, the preterpluperfect, and the future.

1. The present tense speaketh of a thing present, or now doing; as *amo*, I love, or am loving.

2. The preterimperfect tense speaketh of a thing that was done at some time past, but not ended; as *amábam* I did love, or was loving.

3. The preterperfect tense speaketh of a thing lately done; as *amávi*, I have loved.

4. The preterpluperfect tense refers to a thing done at some time past, and now ended; as *amaveram*, I had loved.

5. The future tense speaketh of a thing to be done hereafter; as *amábo*, I shall or will love.

OF NUMBERS AND PERSONS.

VERBS have two numbers, singular and plural, like unto nouns, and three persons in each number; as.

Sing. *Ego amo*, I love.

Tu amas, thou lovest.

Ille amat, he loveth.

Plur. *Nos amamus*, We love.

Vos amatis, ye love.

Illi amant, they love.

Note, That all nouns are of the third Person, except *ego*, *nos*, *tu*, and *vos*: Also, that all nouns of the Vocative Case are of the second Person.

Of the Verb *Esse*, to be.

BEFORE other verbs are declined, it is necessary to learn the verb esse, to be.

Sum, es, fui, esse, futūrus, to be.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Sum,	<i>I am.</i>
Es,	<i>thou art.</i>
Est,	<i>he is.</i>
Plur. Sumus,	<i>We are.</i>
Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Eram,	<i>I was.</i>
Eras,	<i>thou wast.</i>
Erat,	<i>he was.</i>
Plur. Erāmus,	<i>We were.</i>
Erātis,	<i>ye were.</i>
Erant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Fui,	<i>I have been.</i>
Fuisti,	<i>thou hast been.</i>
Fuit,	<i>he hath been.</i>
Plur. Fuimus,	<i>We have been.</i>
Fuistis,	<i>ye have been.</i>
Fuérunt <i>vel</i> fuére,	<i>they have been.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Fueram,	<i>I had been.</i>
Fueras,	<i>thou hadst been.</i>
Fuerat,	<i>he had been.</i>
Plur. Fuerāmus,	<i>We had been.</i>
Fuerātis,	<i>ye had been.</i>
Fuerant,	<i>they had been.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing. Ero,	<i>I shall or will be.</i>
Eris,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be.</i>
Erit,	<i>he shall or will be.</i>
Plur. Erimus,	<i>We shall or will be.</i>
Eritis,	<i>ye shall or will be.</i>
Erant,	<i>they shall or will be.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first Person.*

Sing. Sis, es, esto,	<i>Be thou.</i>
Sit, esto,	<i>be he, or let him be.</i>
Plur. Simus,	<i>Be we, or let us be.</i>
Sitis, este, estóte,	<i>be ye.</i>
Sint, sunt,	<i>be they, or let them be.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may or can.*

Sing. Sim,	<i>I may or can be.</i>
Sis,	<i>thou mayst or canst be.</i>
Sit,	<i>he may or can be.</i>
Plur. Simus,	<i>We may or can be.</i>
Sitis,	<i>ye may or can be.</i>
Sint,	<i>they may or can be.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might or could.*

Sing. Essem vel forem,	<i>I might or could be.</i>
Esses vel fores,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be.</i>
Esset vel foret,	<i>he might or could be.</i>
Plur. Essémus vel forémus,	<i>We might or could be.</i>
Essétis vel forétis,]	<i>ye might or could be.</i>
Essent vel forent,	<i>they might or could be.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may have, should have, &c.*

Sing. Fuerim,	<i>I may or should have been.</i>
Fueris,	<i>thou mayst or shouldst have been.</i>
Fuerit,	<i>he may or should have been.</i>
Plur. Fuerimus,	<i>We may or should have been.</i>
Fueritis,	<i>ye may or should have been.</i>
Fuerint,	<i>they may or should have been.</i>

4. Preter-

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, would have, &c.*

Sing. Fuissem,	<i>I might or would have been.</i>
Fuisses,	<i>thou mightst or wouldst have been.</i>
Fuisset,	<i>he might or would have been.</i>
Plur. Fuissémus,	<i>We might or would have been.</i>
Fuissétis,	<i>ye might or would have been.</i>
Fuissent,	<i>they might or would have been.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Fuero,	<i>I shall have been.</i>
Fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been.</i>
Fuerit,	<i>he shall have been.</i>
Plur. Fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been.</i>
Fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been.</i>
Fuerint.	<i>they shall have been.</i>

The Subjunctive Mood is declined like the Potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Esse,	<i>to be.</i>
-------	---------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Fuisse,	<i>to have been.</i>
---------	----------------------

Future Tense.

Fore <i>vel</i> Futúrum esse,	<i>to be about to be.</i>
-------------------------------	---------------------------

Participle of the Future in *rus*.

Futúrus,	<i>about to be.</i>
----------	---------------------

DECLENSION OF VERBS REGULAR.

VERBS have four conjugations, both in the active and passive voice.

The first conjugation of Verbs active hath *a* long, before *re* and *ris*; as *amāre, amāris*.

The second hath *e* long, before *re* and *ris*: as *monēre, monēris*.

The third hath *e* short, before *re* and *ris*: as *regēre, regēris*.

The

The fourth hath ; long, before *re* and *ris*; as *audire*, *audiris*.

VERBS ACTIVE in *O*, are declined after these examples.

1. Am-o, am-as, amá-vi, am-äre ; am-ándi, amán-do, amán-dum ; amát-um, amát-u ; am-ans, amatú-rus : *to love.*

2. Mon-eo, mon-es, mon-ui, mon-ère ; monen-di, monén-do, monén-dum ; monit-um, monit-u ; mon-ens, monitú-rus : *to advise.*

3. Reg-o, reg-is, rex-i, reg-ère ; regén-di, regén-do, regén-dum ; rect-um, rect-u ; reg-ens, rectú-rus : *to rule or govern.*

4. Aud-io, aud-is, aud-ívi, aud-íre ; audién-di, audién-do, audién-dum ; audit-um, audit-u ; audi-ens, auditú-rus : *to hear.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—do, am.

Sing. Am-o,	<i>I love, am loving, or do love.</i>
am-as,	<i>thou lovest, art loving, or dost love.</i>
am-at,	<i>he loveth, is loving, or doth love.</i>
Plur. Am-ámus,	<i>We love, are loving, or do love.</i>
am-átis,	<i>ye love, are loving, or do love.</i>
am-ant,	<i>they love, are loving, or do love.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—did, was.

Sing. Am-ábam,	<i>I did love, or was loving.</i>
am-ábas,	<i>thou didst love, or wast loving.</i>
am-ábat,	<i>he did love, or was loving.</i>
Plur. Am-abámus,	<i>We did love, or were loving.</i>
am-abátis,	<i>ye did love, or were loving.</i>
am-ábant,	<i>they did love, or were loving.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—have.

Sing. Amáv-i,	<i>I loved, or have loved.</i>
amav-isti,	<i>thou lovedst, or hast loved.</i>
amáv-it,	<i>he loved, or hath loved.</i>

Plur. Amav-imus,	<i>We loved, or have loved.</i>
amav-ístis,	<i>ye loved, or have loved.</i>
amav-érunt, <i>vel -ére,</i>	<i>they loved, or have loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Amav-eram,	<i>I had loved.</i>
amav-eras,	<i>thou hadst loved.</i>
amav-erat,	<i>he had loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-erámus,	<i>We had loved.</i>
amav-erátis,	<i>ye had loved.</i>
amav-erant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing. Am-ábo,	<i>I shall or will love.</i>
am-ábis,	<i>thou shalt or wilt love.</i>
am-ábit,	<i>he shall or will love.</i>
Plur. Am-ábimus,	<i>We shall or will love.</i>
am-ábitis,	<i>ye shall or will love.</i>
am-ábunt,	<i>they shall or will love.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Am-a, am-áto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love.</i>
am-et, am-áto,	<i>love he, or let him love.</i>
Plur. Am-émus,	<i>Love we, or let us love.</i>
am-áte, am-atóte,	<i>love ye, or do ye love.</i>
am-ent, am-ánto,	<i>love they, or let them love.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Am-em,	<i>I may or can love.</i>
am-es,	<i>thou mayst or canst love.</i>
am-et,	<i>he may or can love.</i>
Plur. Am-émus,	<i>We may or can love.</i>
am-étis,	<i>ye may or can love.</i>
am-ent,	<i>they may or can love.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Am-árem,	<i>I might or could love.</i>
am-áres,	<i>thou mightst or couldst love.</i>
am-áret,	<i>he might or could love.</i>

Plur.

Plur. Am-arémus, am-arétis, am-arent,	<i>We might or could love. ye might or could love. they might or could love.</i>
---	--

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Amav-erim, amav-eris, amav-erit,	<i>I should have loved. thou shouldst have loved. he should have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-erimus, amav-eritis, amav-erint,	<i>We should have loved. ye should have loved. they should have loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Amav-íssem, amav-isses, amav-isset,	<i>I would have loved. thou wouldst have loved. he would have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-issémus, amav-issétis, amav-issent,	<i>We would have loved. ye would have loved. they would have loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Amav-ero, amav-eris, amav-erit,	<i>I shall have loved. thou shalt have loved. he shall have loved.</i>
Plur. Amav-erimus, amav-eritis, amav-erint,	<i>We shall have loved. ye shall have loved. they shall have loved.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Am-āre,	<i>to love.</i>
---------	-----------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Amav-ísse,	<i>to have loved.</i>
------------	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Amatú-rum esse,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------

GERUNDS.

Amán-di,	<i>of loving.</i>
Amán-do,	<i>in loving.</i>
Amán-dum,	<i>to love.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.
Amát-um, *to love* ;

Passive.
Amát-u, *to be loved*.

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.
Am-ans, *loving* ;

Future in *rus*.
Amatú-rus, *about to love*.

Obs. IN VERBS, several tenses are formed of the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood, as of *amav-i* are formed ;

1. The preterpluperf. of the same mood, *amav-eram*.
2. The preterperf. of the potential mood, *amav-erim*.
3. The preterpluperf. of the same mood, *amav-issem*.
4. The future tense of the same mood, *amav-ero*.
5. The preterperfect tense of the infinitive mood, *amav-isse*.

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneo.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Mon-eo,	<i>I advise, am advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-es,	<i>thou advisest, art advising, or dost advise.</i>
mon-et,	<i>he adviseth, is advising, or doth advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-ébus,	<i>We advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-étis,	<i>ye advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>
mon-ent,	<i>they advise, are advising, or do advise.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Mon-ébam,	<i>I did advise, or was advising.</i>
mon-ébas,	<i>thou didst advise, or wast advising.</i>
mon-ébat,	<i>he did advise, or was advising.</i>
Plur. Mon-ebámus,	<i>We did advise, or were advising.</i>
mon-ebátis,	<i>ye did advise, or were advising.</i>
mon-ébant,	<i>they did advise, or were advising.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Monu-i,	<i>I advised, or have advised.</i>
monu-isti,	<i>thou advisedst, or hast advised.</i>
monu-it,	<i>he advised, or hath advised.</i>
	Plur.

Plur. Monu-imus,	<i>We advised, or have advised.</i>
monu-istis,	<i>ye advised, or have advised.</i>
monu-érunt, vel -ére,	<i>they advised, or have advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Monu-eram,	<i>I had advised.</i>
monu-eras,	<i>thou hadst advised.</i>
monu-erat,	<i>he had advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-erámus,	<i>We had advised.</i>
monu-erátis,	<i>ye had advised.</i>
monu-erant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing. Moné-bo,	<i>I shall or will advise.</i>
moné-bis,	<i>thou shalt or wilt advise.</i>
moné-bit,	<i>he shall or will advise.</i>
Plur. Moné-bimus,	<i>We shall or will advise.</i>
moné-bitis,	<i>ye shall or will advise.</i>
moné-bunt,	<i>they shall or will advise.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Mon-e, mon-éto,	<i>Advise thou, or do thou advise.</i>
mon-eat, mon-éto,	<i>advise he, or let him advise.</i>
Plur. Mon-eámus,	<i>Advise we, or let us advise.</i>
mon-éte, mon-etóte,	<i>advise ye, or do ye advise.</i>
mon-eant, mon-ento,	<i>advise they, or let them advise.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Mone-am,	<i>I may or can advise.</i>
mone-as,	<i>thou mayst or canst advise.</i>
mone-at,	<i>he may or can advise.</i>
Plur. Mone-ámus,	<i>We may or can advise.</i>
mone-átis,	<i>ye may or can advise.</i>
mone-ant,	<i>they may or can advise.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Moné-rem,	<i>I might or could advise.</i>
mone-res,	<i>thou mightst or couldst advise.</i>
mone-ret,	<i>he might or could advise.</i>

Plur.

Plur. Mone-rémus,	<i>We might or could advise.</i>
mone-rétis,	<i>ye might or could advise.</i>
moné-rent,	<i>they might or could advise.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Monu-erim,	<i>I should have advised.</i>
monu-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have advised.</i>
monu-erit,	<i>he should have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-erimus,	<i>We should have advised.</i>
monu-eritis,	<i>ye should have advised.</i>
monu-erint,	<i>they should have advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Monu-íssem,	<i>I would have advised.</i>
monu-isses,	<i>thou wouldst have advised.</i>
monu-isset,	<i>he would have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-íssémus,	<i>We would have advised.</i>
monu-íssétis,	<i>ye would have advised.</i>
monu-issent,	<i>they would have advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Monu-ero,	<i>I shall have advised.</i>
monu-eris,	<i>thou shalt have advised.</i>
monu-erit,	<i>he shall have advised.</i>
Plur. Monu-erimus,	<i>We shall have advised.</i>
monu-eritis,	<i>ye shall have advised.</i>
monu-erint,	<i>they shall have advised.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Mon-ère,	<i>to advise.</i>
----------	-------------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Monu-ísse,	<i>to have advised.</i>
------------	-------------------------

Future Tense.

Monitú-rum esse,	<i>to be about to advise.</i>
------------------	-------------------------------

GERUNDS.

Monén-di,	<i>of advising.</i>
monén-do,	<i>in advising.</i>
monén-dum,	<i>to advise.</i>

SUPINES.

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Monit-um, <i>to advise;</i>	Monit-u, <i>to be advised.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
Mon-ens, <i>advising;</i>	Monitú-rus, <i>about to advise.</i>

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Rego. INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Reg-o,	<i>I rule, am ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-is,	<i>thou rulest, art ruling, or dost rule.</i>
reg-it,	<i>he ruleth, is ruling, or doth rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-imus,	<i>We rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-itis,	<i>ye rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>
reg-unt,	<i>they rule, are ruling, or do rule.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Regé-bam,	<i>I did rule, or was ruling.</i>
regé-has,	<i>thou didst rule, or wast ruling.</i>
regé-bat,	<i>he did rule, or was ruling.</i>
Plur. Rege-bámus,	<i>We did rule, or were ruling.</i>
rege-bátis,	<i>ye did rule, or were ruling.</i>
regé-bant,	<i>they did rule, or were ruling.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Rex-i,	<i>I ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-isti,	<i>thou ruledst, or hast ruled.</i>
rex-it,	<i>he ruled, or hath ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-imus,	<i>We ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-istis,	<i>ye ruled, or have ruled.</i>
rex-érunt, <i>vel -ére,</i>	<i>they ruled, or have ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Rex-eram,	<i>I had ruled.</i>
rex-eras,	<i>thou hadst ruled.</i>
rex-erat,	<i>he had ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-erámus,	<i>We had ruled.</i>
rex-erátis,	<i>ye had ruled.</i>
rex-erant,	<i>they had ruled.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing. Reg-am,	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
reg-es,	<i>thou shalt or wilt rule.</i>
reg-et,	<i>he shall or will rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-émus,	<i>We shall or will rule.</i>
reg-étis,	<i>ye shall or will rule.</i>
reg-ent,	<i>they shall or will rule.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Reg-e, reg-ito,	<i>Rule thou, or do thou rule.</i>
reg-at, reg-ito,	<i>rule he, or let him rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-ámus,	<i>Rule we, or let us rule.</i>
reg-ite, reg-itóte,	<i>rule ye, or do ye rule.</i>
reg-ant, reg-únto,	<i>rule they, or let them rule.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Reg-am,	<i>I may or can rule.</i>
reg-as,	<i>thou mayst or canst rule.</i>
reg-at,	<i>he may or can rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-ámus,	<i>We may or can rule.</i>
reg-átis,	<i>ye may or can rule.</i>
reg-ant,	<i>they may or can rule.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Reg-erem,	<i>I might or could rule.</i>
reg-eres,	<i>thou mightst or couldst rule.</i>
reg-eret,	<i>he might or could rule.</i>
Plur. Reg-erémus,	<i>We might or could rule.</i>
reg-crétis,	<i>ye might or could rule.</i>
reg-erent,	<i>they might or could rule.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Rex-erim,	<i>I should have ruled.</i>
rex-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have ruled.</i>
rex-erit,	<i>he should have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-erimus,	<i>We should have ruled.</i>
rex-eritis,	<i>ye should have ruled.</i>
rex-erint,	<i>they should have ruled.</i>

4. Preterplu-

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Rex-íssem,	<i>I would have ruled.</i>
rex-isses,	<i>thou wouldst have ruled.</i>
rex-isset,	<i>he would have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-issémus,	<i>We would have ruled.</i>
rex-issétis,	<i>ye would have ruled.</i>
rex-issent,	<i>they would have ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Rex-ero,	<i>I shall have ruled.</i>
rex-eris,	<i>thou shalt have ruled.</i>
rex-erit,	<i>he shall have ruled.</i>
Plur. Rex-erímus,	<i>We shall have ruled.</i>
rex-erítis,	<i>ye shall have ruled.</i>
rex-erint,	<i>they shall have ruled.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-ěre,	<i>to rule.</i>
----------	-----------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rex-isse,	<i>to have ruled.</i>
-----------	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Rectú-rum esse,	<i>to be about to rule.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------

GERUNDS.

Regén-di,	<i>of ruling.</i>
regén-do,	<i>in ruling.</i>
regén-dum,	<i>to rule.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Rect-um, <i>to rule</i> ;	Rect-ū, <i>to be ruled.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
Regens, <i>ruling</i> ;	Rectú-rus, <i>about to rule.</i>

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audio.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*do, am.*

Sing. Aud-io,	<i>I hear, am hearing, or do hear.</i>
aud-is,	<i>thou hearest, art hearing, or dost hear.</i>
aud-it,	<i>he heareth, is hearing, or doth hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-ímus,	<i>We hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>
aud-ítis,	<i>ye hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>
aud-iunt,	<i>they hear, are hearing, or do hear.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*did, was.*

Sing. Audié-bam,	<i>I did hear, or was hearing.</i>
audié-bas,	<i>thou didst hear, or wast hearing.</i>
audié-bat,	<i>he did hear, or was hearing.</i>
Plur. Audie-bámus,	<i>We did hear, or were hearing.</i>
audie-bátis,	<i>ye did hear, or were hearing.</i>
audié-bant,	<i>they did hear, or were hearing.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have.*

Sing. Audiv-i,	<i>I heard, or have heard.</i>
audiv-ísti,	<i>thou heardst, or hast heard.</i>
audiv-it,	<i>he heard, or hath heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-imus,	<i>We heard, or have heard.</i>
audiv-ístis,	<i>ye heard, or have heard.</i>
audiv-érunt, <i>vel -ére,</i>	<i>they heard, or have heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had.*

Sing. Audiv-eram,	<i>I had heard.</i>
audiv-eras,	<i>thou hadst heard.</i>
audiv-erat,	<i>he had heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-erámus,	<i>We had heard.</i>
audiv-erátis,	<i>ye had heard.</i>
audiv-erant,	<i>they had heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will.*

Sing. Audi-am,	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
audi-es,	<i>thou shalt or wilt hear.</i>
audi-et,	<i>he shall or will hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-émus,	<i>We shall or will hear.</i>
audi-étis,	<i>ye shall or will hear.</i>
audi-ent,	<i>they shall or will hear.</i>

IMPERATIVE

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense. *No first person.*

Sing. Aud-i, aud-íto,	<i>Hear thou, or do thou hear.</i>
aud-iat, aud-íto,	<i>hear he, or let him hear.</i>
Plur. Aud-iámus,	<i>Hear we, or let us hear.</i>
aud-íte, aud-itóte,	<i>hear ye, or do ye hear.</i>
aud-iant, aud-iúnto,	<i>hear they, or let them hear.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should.*

Sing. Aud-iam,	<i>I may or can hear.</i>
aud-ias,	<i>thou mayst or canst hear.</i>
aud-iat,	<i>he may or can hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-ámus,	<i>We may or can hear.</i>
audi-átis,	<i>ye may or can hear.</i>
audi-ant,	<i>they may or can hear.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should.*

Sing. Audi-rem,	<i>I might or could hear.</i>
audi-res,	<i>thou mightst or couldst hear.</i>
audi-ret,	<i>he might or could hear.</i>
Plur. Audi-rémus,	<i>We might or could hear.</i>
audi-rétis,	<i>ye might or could hear.</i>
audi-rent,	<i>they might or could hear.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*should have, may have.*

Sing. Audiv-erim,	<i>I should have heard.</i>
audiv-eris,	<i>thou shouldst have heard.</i>
audiv-erit,	<i>he should have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-erimus,	<i>We should have heard.</i>
audiv-eritis,	<i>ye should have heard.</i>
audiv-erint,	<i>they should have heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could have.*

Sing. Audiv-íssem,	<i>I would have heard.</i>
audiv-ísset,	<i>thou wouldst have heard.</i>
audiv-ísset,	<i>he would have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-issémus,	<i>We would have heard.</i>
audiv-issétis,	<i>ye would have heard.</i>
audiv-issent,	<i>they would have heard.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall have.*

Sing. Audiv-ero,	<i>I shall have heard.</i>
audiy-eris,	<i>thou shalt have heard.</i>
audiv-erit,	<i>he shall have heard.</i>
Plur. Audiv-erimus,	<i>We shall have heard.</i>
audiy-eritis,	<i>ye shall have heard.</i>
audiv-erint,	<i>they shall have heard.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aud-ire,	<i>to hear.</i>
----------	-----------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Audiv-isse,	<i>to have heard.</i>
-------------	-----------------------

Future Tense.

Auditú-rum esse,	<i>to be about to hear.</i>
------------------	-----------------------------

GERUNDS.

Audién-di,	<i>of hearing.</i>
audién-do,	<i>in hearing.</i>
audién-dum,	<i>to hear.</i>

SUPINES.

Active.	Passive.
Audit-um, <i>to hear ;</i>	Audit-u, <i>to be heard.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

Present Tense.	Future in <i>rus</i> .
Audi-ens, <i>hearing ;</i>	Auditú-rus, <i>about to hear.</i>

DECLENSION OF VERBS PASSIVE.

VERBS PASSIVE in *OR*, are thus declined :

1. Am-or, am-áris *vel* am-áre, amát-us sum *vel* fui,
am-ári ; amát-us, amán-dus : *to be loved.*
2. Mon-tor, mon-eris *vel* mon-tre, monit-us sum *vel*
fui, mon-éri ; monit-us, monén-dus : *to be advised.*
3. Reg-or,

3. Reg-or, reg-ēris *vel* reg-ēre, rect-us sum *vel* fui,
reg-i; rect-us, regēn-dus: *to be ruled.*

4. Aud-ior, aud-īris *vel* aud-īre, aud-ītus sum *vel* fui,
aud-iri; aud-ītus, audien-dus: *to be heard.*

FIRST CONJUGATION.—Amor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Am-or,	<i>I am loved.</i>
am-āris <i>v.</i> am-āre,	<i>thou art loved.</i>
am-ātur,	<i>he is loved.</i>
Plur. Am-āmur,	<i>We are loved.</i>
am-āmini,	<i>ye are loved.</i>
am-āntur,	<i>they are loved.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Am-ābar,	<i>I was loved.</i>
am-abāris <i>v.</i> am-abāre,	<i>thou wast loved.</i>
am-abātur,	<i>he was loved.</i>
Plur. Am-abāmur,	<i>We were loved.</i>
am-abāmini,	<i>ye were loved.</i>
am-abantur,	<i>they were loved.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Amāt-us sum <i>vel</i> fui,	<i>I have been loved.</i>
amat-us es <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been loved.</i>
amat-us est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been loved.</i>
Plur. Amat-i sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>We have been loved.</i>
amat-i estis <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been loved.</i>
amat-i sunt, fuerunt <i>v.</i> -ére,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Amāt-us eram <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been loved.</i>
amat-useras <i>v.</i> fuēras,	<i>thou hadst been loved.</i>
amat-us erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been loved.</i>
Plur. Amat-ierāmus <i>v.</i> fuerāmus,	<i>We had been loved.</i>
amat-i erātis <i>v.</i> fuerātis,	<i>ye had been loved.</i>
amat-i erant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

5. Future

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing. Am-ábor,	<i>I shall or will be loved.</i>
am-aberis v. am-abere,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be loved.</i>
am-abitur,	<i>he shall or will be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-abimur,	<i>We shall or will be loved.</i>
am-abimini,	<i>ye shall or will be loved.</i>
am-abúntur,	<i>they shall or will be loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Am-áre, am-átor,	<i>Be thou loved.</i>
am-étur, am-átor,	<i>let him be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-émur,	<i>Let us be loved.</i>
am-amini, am-aminor,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
am-éntur, am-ántor,	<i>let them be loved.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing. Am-er,	<i>I may or can be loved.</i>
am-éris v. am-ére,	<i>thou mayst or canst be loved.</i>
am-étur,	<i>he may or can be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-émur,	<i>We may or can be loved.</i>
am-émini,	<i>ye may or can be loved.</i>
am-éntur,	<i>they may or can be loved.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing. Am-árer,	<i>I might or could be loved.</i>
am-aréris v. am-arére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be loved.</i>
am-arétur,	<i>he might or could be loved.</i>
Plur. Am-arémur,	<i>We might or could be loved.</i>
am-arémini,	<i>ye might or could be loved.</i>
am-aréntur,	<i>they might or could be loved.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing. Amát-us sim v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been loved.</i>
amat-us sis v. fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been loved.</i>
amat-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been loved.</i>

Plur.

Plur. Amát-i simus v. fuerimus,	<i>We should have been loved.</i>
amat-i sitis v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been loved.</i>
amat-i sint v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been loved.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing. Amát-us essem v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been loved.</i>
amat-us esses v. fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved.</i>
amat-us esset v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amát-i essémus v. fuissémus,	<i>We would have been loved.</i>
amat-i essétis v. fuissétis,	<i>ye would have been loved.</i>
amat-i essent v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. Amát-us ero v. fuero,	<i>I shall have been loved.</i>
amat-us eris v. fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been loved.</i>
amat-us erit v. fuerit,	<i>he shall have been loved.</i>
Plur. Amát-i erimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been loved.</i>
amat-i eritis v. fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been loved.</i>
amat-i erunt v. fuerint,	<i>they shall have been loved.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Am-ári,	<i>to be loved.</i>
---------	---------------------

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Amát-um esse vel fuisse,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
--------------------------	----------------------------

Future Tense.

Amát-um iri,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
--------------	---------------------------------

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Amát-us,	<i>loved or being loved</i>
----------	-----------------------------

The Future in *dus*.

Aman-dus,	<i>to be loved.</i>
-----------	---------------------

SECOND CONJUGATION.—Moneor. INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. Mon-eor,	<i>I am advised.</i>
mon-éris <i>vel</i> mon-ére,	<i>thou art advised.</i>
mon-étur,	<i>he is advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-émur,	<i>We are advised.</i>
mon-émini,	<i>ye are advised.</i>
mon-éntur,	<i>they are advised.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Mon-ébar,	<i>I was advised.</i>
mon-ebáris <i>v.</i> mon-ebáre,	<i>thou wast advised.</i>
mon-ebátur,	<i>he was advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-ebámur,	<i>We were advised.</i>
mon-ebámini,	<i>ye were advised.</i>
mon-ebántur,	<i>they were advised.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Monit-us sum <i>v.</i> fui,	<i>I have been advised.</i>
monit-us es <i>v.</i> fuisti,	<i>thou hast been advised.</i>
monit-us est <i>v.</i> fuit,	<i>he hath been advised.</i>
Plur. Monit-i sumus <i>v.</i> fuimus,	<i>We have been advised.</i>
monit-i estis <i>v.</i> fuistis,	<i>ye have been advised.</i>
monit-i sunt, fuérunt <i>v.</i> fuére,	<i>they have been advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Monit-us eram <i>v.</i> fueram,	<i>I had been advised.</i>
monit-us eras <i>v.</i> fueras,	<i>thou hadst been advised.</i>
monit-us erat <i>v.</i> fuerat,	<i>he had been advised.</i>
Plur. Monit-ierámus <i>v.</i> fuerámus,	<i>We had been advised.</i>
monit-ierátis <i>v.</i> fuerátis,	<i>ye had been advised.</i>
monit-ierant <i>v.</i> fuerant,	<i>they had been advised.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing. Mon-ébor,	<i>I shall or will be advised.</i>
mon-eberis <i>v.</i> mon-ebere,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be advised.</i>
mon-ebitur,	<i>he shall or will be advised.</i>
	Plur.

Plur. Mon-ebimur,	<i>We shall or will be advised.</i>
mon-ebimini,	<i>ye shall or will be advised.</i>
mon-ebuntur,	<i>they shall or will be advised.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Mon-ére, mon-éto,	<i>Be thou advised.</i>
mon-eatur, mon-éto,	<i>let him be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eamur,	<i>Let us be advised.</i>
mon-emini, mon-eminor,	<i>be ye advised.</i>
mon-eantur, mon-éntor,	<i>let them be advised.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing. Mon-ear,	<i>I may or can be advised.</i>
mon-eáris v. mon-eáre,	<i>thou mayst or canst be advised.</i>
mon-eatur,	<i>he may or can be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-eamur,	<i>We may or can be advised.</i>
mon-eámini,	<i>ye may or can be advised.</i>
mon-eantur,	<i>they may or can be advised.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing. Mon-éer,	<i>I might or could be advised.</i>
mon-eréris v. mon-erére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be advised.</i>
mon-erétur,	<i>he might or could be advised.</i>
Plur. Mon-erémur,	<i>We might or could be advised.</i>
mon-erémini,	<i>ye might or could be advised.</i>
mon-eréntur,	<i>they might or could be advised.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing. Monit-us sim v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been advised.</i>
monit-us sis v. fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been advised.</i>
monit-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been advised.</i>
Plur. Monit-isimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We should have been advised.</i>
monit-i sitis v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been advised.</i>
monit-i sint v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been advised.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing. Monit-us essem v. fuisssem,	<i>I would have been advised.</i>
monit-us esses v. fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been advised.</i>
monit-us esset v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been advised.</i>

Plur. **Monit-i essémus v. fuissémus,** *We would have been advised.*
monit-i essétis v. fuissétis, *ye would have been advised.*
monit-i essent v. fuissent, *they would have been advised.*

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. **Monit-us ero v. fuero,** *I shall have been advised.*
monit-us eris v. fueris, *thou shalt have been advised.*
monit-us erit v. fuerit, *he shall have been advised.*
 Plur. **Monit-i erimus v. fuerimus,** *We shall have been advised.*
monit-i eritis v. fueritis, *ye shall have been advised.*
monit-i erunt v. fuerint, *they shall have been advised.*

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Monéri, *to be advised.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Monit-um esse vel fuisse, *to have been advised.*

Future Tense.

Monit-um iri, *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Monit-us, *advised or being advised.*

The Future in *dus*.

Monén-dus, *to be advised.*

THIRD CONJUGATION.—Regor.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am.*

Sing. **Reg-or,** *I am ruled.*
reg-eris v. reg-ere, *thou art ruled.*
reg-itur, *he is ruled.*
 Plur. **Reg-imur,** *We are ruled.*
reg-imini, *ye are ruled.*
reg-úntur, *they are ruled.*

2. Preter-

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was.*

Sing. Reg-ēbar,	<i>I was ruled.</i>
reg-ebāris v. reg-ebāre,	<i>thou wast ruled.</i>
reg-ebātur,	<i>he was ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ebāmur,	<i>We were ruled.</i>
reg-ebāmini,	<i>ye were ruled.</i>
reg-ebāntur,	<i>they were ruled.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sum v. fui,	<i>I have been ruled.</i>
rec-tus es v. fuisti,	<i>thou hast been ruled.</i>
rect-us est v. fuit,	<i>he hath been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i sumus v. fuimus,	<i>We have been ruled.</i>
rect-i estis v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sunt, fuērunt v. fuēre,	<i>they have been ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing. Rect-us eram v. fueram,	<i>I had been ruled.</i>
rect-us eras v. fueras,	<i>thou hadst been ruled.</i>
rect-us erat v. fuerat,	<i>he had been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i erāmus v. fuerāmus,	<i>We had been ruled.</i>
rect-i erātis v. fuerātis,	<i>ye had been ruled.</i>
rect-i erant v. fuerant,	<i>they had been ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I shall or will be ruled.</i>
reg-eris v. reg-ēre,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be ruled.</i>
reg-etur,	<i>he shall or will be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ēmur,	<i>We shall or will be ruled.</i>
reg-ēmini,	<i>ye shall or will be ruled.</i>
reg-entur,	<i>they shall or will be ruled.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing. Reg-ere, reg-itor,	<i>Be thou ruled.</i>
reg-atur, reg-itor,	<i>let him be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-āmur,	<i>Let us be ruled.</i>
reg-imini, reg-īminor,	<i>be ye ruled.</i>
reg-antur, reg-untor,	<i>let them be ruled.</i>

POTENTIAL

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing. Reg-ar,	<i>I may or can be ruled.</i>
reg-áris v. reg-áre,	<i>thou mayst or canst be ruled.</i>
reg-átur,	<i>he may or can be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-ámur,	<i>We may or can be ruled.</i>
reg-ámini,	<i>ye may or can be ruled.</i>
reg-ántur,	<i>they may or can be ruled.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing. Reg-erer,	<i>I might or could be ruled.</i>
reg-eréris v. reg-erére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be ruled.</i>
reg-erétur,	<i>he might or could be ruled.</i>
Plur. Reg-erémur,	<i>We might or could be ruled.</i>
reg-erémini,	<i>ye might or could be ruled.</i>
reg-eréntur,	<i>they might or could be ruled.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing. Rect-us sim v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sis v. fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been ruled.</i>
rect-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i simus v. fuerimus,	<i>We should have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sitis v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been ruled.</i>
rect-i sint v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been ruled.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*might, could, would, have been.*

Sing. Rect-us essem v. fuisset,	<i>I would have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esses v. fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been ruled.</i>
rect-us esset v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i essemus v. fuissémus,	<i>We would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essétis v. fuissétis,	<i>ye would have been ruled.</i>
rect-i essent v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been ruled.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. Rect-us ero v. fuero,	<i>I shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-us eris v. fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been ruled.</i>
rect-us erit v. fuerit,	<i>he shall have been ruled.</i>
Plur. Rect-i erimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-i eritis v. fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been ruled.</i>
rect-i erunt v. fuerint,	<i>they shall have been ruled.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Reg-i, *to be ruled.*

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Rect-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been ruled.*

Future Tense.

Rect-um iri, *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Rect-us, *ruled or being ruled.*The Future in *dus*.Regén-dus, *to be ruled.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.—Audior.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*am*.

Sing. Aud-ior,	<i>I am heard.</i>
aud-iris <i>v.</i> aud-ire,	<i>thou art heard.</i>
aud-itur,	<i>he is heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-ímur,	<i>We are heard.</i>
aud-ímini,	<i>ye are heard.</i>
aud-iúntur,	<i>they are heard.</i>

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*was*.

Sing. Aud-iébar,	<i>I was heard.</i>
aud-iebáris <i>v.</i> aud-iebáre,	<i>thou wast heard.</i>
aud-iebátur,	<i>he was heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-iebámur,	<i>We were heard.</i>
aud-iebámini,	<i>ye were heard.</i>
aud-iebántur,	<i>they were heard.</i>

3. Preterperfect

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*have been.*

Sing.	Audit-us sum v. fui,	<i>I have been heard.</i>
	audit-us es v. fuisti,	<i>thou hast been heard.</i>
	audit-us est v. fuit,	<i>he hath been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i sumus v. fuimus,	<i>We have been heard.</i>
	audit-i estis v. fuistis,	<i>ye have been heard.</i>
	audit-i sunt, fuérunt v. fuére,	<i>they have been heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*had been.*

Sing.	Audit-us eram v. fueram,	<i>I had been heard.</i>
	audit-us eras v. fueras,	<i>thou hadst been heard.</i>
	audit-us erat v. fuerat,	<i>he had been heard.</i>
Plur.	Audit-i erámus v. fuerámus,	<i>We had been heard.</i>
	audit-i erátis v. fuerátis,	<i>ye had been heard.</i>
	audit-i erant v. fuerant,	<i>they had been heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall or will be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	<i>I shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-iéris v. aud-iére,	<i>thou shalt or wilt be heard.</i>
	aud-iétur,	<i>he shall or will be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iémur,	<i>We shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-iémini,	<i>ye shall or will be heard.</i>
	aud-ientur,	<i>they shall or will be heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Sing.	Aud-íre, aud-ítor,	<i>Be thou heard.</i>
	aud-iátur, aud-ítor,	<i>let him be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iámur,	<i>Let us be heard.</i>
	aud-ímini, aud-íminor,	<i>be ye heard.</i>
	aud-iántur, aud-iántor,	<i>let them be heard.</i>

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*may, can, would, should, be.*

Sing.	Aud-iar,	<i>I may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iáris v. aud-iáre,	<i>thou mayst or canst be heard.</i>
	aud-iátur,	<i>he may or can be heard.</i>
Plur.	Aud-iámur,	<i>We may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iámini,	<i>ye may or can be heard.</i>
	aud-iántur,	<i>they may or can be heard.</i>

2. Preter-

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*might, could, should, be.*

Sing. Aud-írer,	<i>I might or could be heard.</i>
aud-iréris v. aud-irére,	<i>thou mightst or couldst be heard.</i>
aud-irétur,	<i>he might or could be heard.</i>
Plur. Aud-irémur,	<i>We might or could be heard.</i>
aud-irémini,	<i>ye might or could be heard.</i>
aud-iréntur,	<i>they might or could be heard.</i>

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*may, should, have been.*

Sing. Audit-us sim v. fuerim,	<i>I should have been heard.</i>
audit-us sis v. fueris,	<i>thou shouldst have been heard,</i>
audit-us sit v. fuerit,	<i>he should have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audit-isimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We should have been heard.</i>
audit-i sitis v. fueritis,	<i>ye should have been heard.</i>
audit-i sint v. fuerint,	<i>they should have been heard.</i>

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*would, might, could, have been.*

Sing. Audit-us essem v. fuíssem,	<i>I would have been heard.</i>
audit-us esses v. fuisses,	<i>thou wouldst have been heard.</i>
audit-us esset v. fuisset,	<i>he would have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audit-i essémus v. fuíssemus,	<i>We would have been heard.</i>
audit-i essétis v. fuissetis,	<i>ye would have been heard.</i>
audit-i essent v. fuissent,	<i>they would have been heard.</i>

5. Future Tense.—*shall have been.*

Sing. Audit-us ero v. fuero,	<i>I shall have been heard.</i>
audit-us eris v. fueris,	<i>thou shalt have been heard.</i>
audit-us erit v. fuerit,	<i>he shall have been heard.</i>
Plur. Audit-i erimus v. fuerimus,	<i>We shall have been heard.</i>
audit-i eritis v. fueritis,	<i>ye shall have been heard.</i>
audit-i erunt v. fuerint,	<i>they shall have been heard.</i>

The subjunctive mood is declined like the potential.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.

Aud-íri, *to be heard.*

Preterperfect

Preterperfect and Preterpluperfect Tense.

Audit-um esse *vel* fuisse, *to have been heard.*

Future Tense.

Audit-um iri, *to be about to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

The Preterperfect Tense.

Audit-us, *heard or being heard.*

The Future in *dus*.

Audién-dus, *to be heard.*

DECLENSION OF VERBS IRREGULAR.

CERTAIN Verbs vary from the general rule, and are formed in the manner following ;

1. Possum, potes, potui, posse ; potens : *to be able.*
2. Volo, vis, volui, velle ; voléndi, voléndo, voléndum ; volens : *to be willing.*
3. Nolo, nonvis, nolui, nolle ; noléndi, noléndo, noléndum ; nolens : *to be unwilling.*
4. Malo, mavis, malui, malle ; maléndi, maléndo, maléndum ; malens : *to be more willing, or to have rather.*
5. Edo, edis, *vel* es, edi, edère, *vel* esse ; edéndi, edéndo, edéndum ; esum, esu ; edens, esúrus : *to eat.*
6. Fero, fers, tuli, ferre ; feréndi, feréndo, feréndum ; latum, latu ; ferens, latúrus : *to bear or suffer.*
7. Fio, fis, factus sum *vel* fui, fiéri ; factus, faciéndus : *to be made or done.*
8. Feror, ferris *vel* ferre, 'latus sum *vel* fui, ferri ; latus, feréndus : *to be borne or suffered.*

INDICATIVE

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I am able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Possum,	potes,	potest,	Possumus,	potéstis,	possunt.
Volo,	vis,	vult,	volumus,	vultis,	volunt.
Nolo,	nonvis,	nonvult,	nolumus,	nonvúltis,	nolunt.
Malo,	mavis,	mavult,	malumus,	mavúltis,	malunt.
Edo,	edis v. es,	edit v. est,	edimus,	editis v. estis,	edunt.
Fero;	fers,	fert,	ferimus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Fio,	fis,	fit,	finus,	fitis,	fiunt.
Feror,	ferris v. ferre,	fertur,	ferimur,	ferimini,	ferúntur.

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I was able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Pot-eram,	eras,	erat,	erámus,	erátis,	erant.
Volé-bam,	bas,	bat,	bámus,	bátis,	bant.
Nolé-bam,					
Malé-bam,					
Edé-bam,					
Féré-bam,					
Fié-bam,					
Féré-bar,	báris v. báre,	báture,	bámur,	bamini,	bántur.

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Potu-i,	isti,	it,	imus,	istis;	érunt <i>vel</i> ero.
Volu-i,					
Nolu-i,					
Malui,					
Ed-i,					
Tul-i,					
Ractus,	sum,	es,	est,	i sumus,	estis, sunt, fuérunt,
	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.
	fui;	isti;	fuit;	fuimus;	fuistis;
					fuere.

D

4. Preter-

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*I had been able, &c.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Potu-eram,	} eras,	erat,	erámus,	erátis,	erant.
Volu-eram,					
Nolu-eram,					
Malu-eram,					
Ed-eram,					
Tul-eram,					
Fact-us,	} eram,	eras,	erat,	ierámus	erátis
Lat-us,					
	v.	v.	v.	v.	v.
	fu-eram; -eras; -erat; fuerámus; fuerátis; fuerant.				

5. Future Tense.—*I shall or will be able, &c.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Pot-ero,	eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt.
Vol-am,	} es,	et,	émus,	étis,	ent.
Nol-am,					
Mal-am,					
Ed-am,					
Fer-am,					
Fi-am,					
Fer-ar,	éris v. ére,	étur,	émur,	émini,	éntur.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Obs. *Possum, volo, malo*, have no Imperative Mood.

Present Tense.—*be thou unwilling, &c.*

Singular.		Plural.	
Noli, nolito,		nolíte, nolitóte.	
Ede, edito, <i>vel</i> Es, esto;	edámus;	edite, editóte, <i>vel</i> Este,	
edat, edito <i>vel</i> esto,		[estóte; ed-ant, -únto.	
Fer, ferto; ferat, fertq,	ferámus;	ferte, fertóte, fer-ant, -únto.	
Fi, fito; fiat, fito,	fiámus;	fite, fitóte; fiant, fi-	
Fer-re, -tor; fer-átur, -tor,	ferámur;	ferimin-i, -or; ánta-	

POTENTIAL MOOD.

1. Present Tense.—*I may be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-im,	} is,	it,	imus,	itis,	int.
Vel-im,					
Nol-im,					
Mal-im,					
Ed-am,	} as,	at,	amus,	atis,	ant.
Fer-am,					
Fi-am,					
Fer-ar, áris v. áre,		átur,	ámur,	ámini,	ántur,

2. Preterimperfect Tense.—*I might be able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Poss-em,	} es,	et,	émus,	étis,	ent.
Vel-em,					
Noll-em,					
Mall-em,					
Eder-em,					
vel.					
Ess-em,		étur,	émur,	émini,	éntur.
Ferr-em,					
Fier-em,					
Ferr-er, éris v. ére,					

3. Preterperfect Tense.—*I should have been able, &c.*

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
Potu-erim,	} eris, erit,		erimus,	eritis,	erint,
Volu-erim,					
Nolu-erim,					
Malu-erim,					
Ed-erim,					
Tul-erim,					
Fact-us,	sim,	sis, sit,	i simus,	sitis,	sint,
	v. v. v.		v. v. v.		
	fue-rim; -ris; -rit;		fuerimus; fueritis; fuerint.		

4. Preterpluperfect Tense.—*I might have been able, &c.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Potu-issem,	} isses,	isset,	issémus,	issétis,	issent.
Volu-issem,					
Nolu-issem,					
Malu-issem,					
Ed-issem,					
Tul-issem,					
Fact-us,	essem, esses,	esset,	essémus,	essétis,	essent,
	v. v. v.	v.	v.	v.	v.
Lat-us,	fu-issem; -isses; -esset		fuissémus; fuissétis; fuissent.		

5. Future Tense.—*I shall have been able, &c.*

Singular.			Plural.		
Potu-ero,	} eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erint,
Volu-ero,					
Nolu-ero,					
Malu-ero,					
Ed-ero,					
Tul-ero,					
Fact-us,	ero, eris,	erit,	erimus,	eritis,	erunt,
	v. v. v.	v.	v.	v.	v.
Lat-us,	fue-ro; -ris; -rit;		fuerimus; fueritis; fuerint.		

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present and Preterimperfect Tense.—*to be able, &c.*

Posse.	Edere vel esse.
Velle.	Ferre.
Nolle.	Fieri.
Malle.	Ferri.

Preterper. and Preterpluper. Tense.—*to have been able, &c.*

Potuisse.	Edisse.
Voluisse.	Tulisse.
Noluisse.	Factum esse vel fuisse.
Maluisse.	Latum esse vel fuisse.

Future Tense.—*to be about to eat, &c.*

Esúrum esse.	Factum iri.
Latúrum esse.	Latum iri.

Obs. *Possum, volo, nolo, malo*, have no Future Tense of the Infinitive Mood.

EO, to go, is also a verb irregular.

Eo, is, ivi, ire, itum, iens, iturus.

Indic. Mood } *Sing.* *Eo*, is, it. *Plur.* Imus, itis, eunt.
Pres. T. }

Preterimperf. } *Sing.* Ibam, ibas, ibat. *Pl.* Ibamus, ibatis,
Tense. } [ibant.]

Future Tense. *Sing.* Ibo, ibis, ibit. *Pl.* Ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.

Imperat. M. *Sing.* I, ito; eat, ito. *Pl.* Eamus; ite,
 [itôte; eant, eunto.]

Potent. M. *Sing.* Eam, eas, eat. *Pl.* Eamus, eatis, eant.

Gerunds. Eündi, eündo, eündum.

Participle Pres. Tens. Iéns, *gen.* eúntis.

In all other moods and tenses *Eo* is declined like *audio*.

Obs. In like manner are the compounds of *Eo* declined; also *queo*, to be able, and *nequeo*, to be unable, except that these two last have no imperative mood or gerunds.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

VERBS are called *defective**, that have only some particular Tenses and Persons; as

Aio, I say.

Indic. Mood, Pres. Tense, Sing. Aio, ais, ait. *Pl.* Aiunt.

Preterimp. T. *Sing.* Aié-bam, bas, bat.

Plur. Aie-bamus, batis, bant.

* 1. *Apagē*, away with, has *apagite*.

2. *For*, to speak, and *dor*, to be given, with its potential *der*, are not used. *Sci*, the imperative of *scio*, is obsolete. *Dic*, *duc*, *fac*, are used by apocope for *dice*, *duce*, *face*.

3. *Facio* takes *fi*, for its passive instead of *facior*, which is not in use. The compounds, however, of *facio*, when they change the *a* into *i*, are regular both in the imperative active, and in the passive voice, as *inficio* makes *inficior*.

Preter-

Preterperf. T. Sing. Aisti, Plur. Aistis.

Imperative Mood, Sing. Ai.

Potent. M. Pres. T. Sing. Aias, aiat. Pl. Aiāmus, aiant.

Participle Pres. Tense. Aiens.

Ausim, I dare.

Indic. or Potent. M. Sing. Ausim, ausis, ausit.

Pl.

Ausint.

Ave, Hail!

Imperative M. Sing. Ave, avéto. Pl. Avéte, avetôte.

Infinitive M. Avére.

Salve, God save you!

Indicat. M. Future T. Sing. Salvébis.

Imperat. M. Sing. Salve, salvéto. Pl. Salvéte, salvetôte.

Infin. M. Salvére.

Cedo, Give me.

Imperat. M. Sing. Cedo. Pl. Cedité.

Faxo or Faxim, I will or may do it; pro Faciam, &c.

Indic. Fut. or Pot. M. Sing. Faxo vel faxim, faxis,

faxit. Pl. Faximus, faxitis, faxint.

Quæso, I pray.

Indic. M. Pres. T. Sing. Quæso, quæsis, quæsit.

Pl. Quæsumus.

Infin. M. Quæsere. Participle, Quæsens.

Inquo or Inquam, I say.

Indic. M. Pres. T. Sing. Inquo vel in-quam, -quis, -quit.

Pl. Inquimus, inquit.

Preterimp. T. Sing. Inquiébat. Pl. Inquiébant.

Preterp. T. Sing. Inquisti.

Future T. Sing. Inquies, inquiet.

Imperat. Mood, Sing. Inque, inquit vel inquito.

Participle, Inquiens.

Memini, I remember.

Imperat. Mood, Sing. Memento. Pl. Mementôte.

Cœpi, I begin.

Indic. M. Preterperf. T. Sing. Cœpi, cœpisti.

Odi, I hate.

Indic. M. Preterperf. T. Sing. Odi, odisti, odit.

Pl.

Odérunt.

Novi, I know; and Memini, I remember. These ten

verbs

verbs have the tenses only that are formed from the preterperfect tense of the indicative mood ; as of

Memin-i are formed *memin-eram, -erim, -issem, -ero, -isse.*

In like manner do *cæpi* and *odi* also form these tenses.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

VERBS when expressed in general, and in English take the word *It* before them, are called *Impersonals** ; as

It delighteth, *delectat, delectábat, delectávit, &c.*

It becometh, *decet, decébat, decuit, &c.*

It is fought, *pugnátur, pugnabátur, pugnátum est, &c.*

It seemeth, *vidétur, videbátur, vidébitur, visum est, &c.*

OF A PARTICIPLE.

A PARTICIPLE† is a part of speech derived from a verb, and taketh part of a noun ; as number, gender, case, and declension : and part of a verb ; as tense and signification.

There are four kinds of PARTICIPLES.

1. One of the Present Tense, which in English ends in *ing*, and in Latin in *ans* or *ens* ; as *loving*, *amans* ; *teaching*, *docens*.

* 1. Impersonals are declined through all moods and tenses in the third person singular only ; some, however, are defective and irregular. *Confit, it is done* ; and *iafit, he begins*, have only the present : *defit*, and *ovat* are also defective. Some are irregular, as *libet*, which makes *libuit*, and *libitum est vel fuit* ; *licet, licuit, licitum, &c.*

2. Several verbs which are regular in the *active*, are used impersonally *passive*.

† 1. Verbs deponent, which have an active signification with a passive termination, have the four participles : as *loquor*, to speak, makes *loquens*, speaking ; *locutúrus*, about to speak ; *locútus*, having spoken ; *loquéndus*, to be spoken. They are declined also with gerunds and supines like the active verbs.

2. Participles of the present tense are declined like the third declension of adjectives ; the other three participles are declined like *bonus*.

2. One

2. One of the Future in *rus*, which signifies a likelihood or design of doing a thing; as *amatûrus*, to love, or about to love.

3. One of the Preterperfect Tense, which has generally a passive signification, and in English ends in *d*, *t*, or *n*; as *lectus*, read; *doctus*, taught; *visus*, seen.

4. One of the Future in *dus*, which also has a passive signification, and expresses a future action; as *amandus*, to be loved.

Note, All participles are declined like nouns adjective.

OF AN ADVERB.

AN ADVERB* is a part of speech joined to verbs, adjectives, and nouns, to increase or diminish their signification: as, he speaks *well*; they write *badly*.

OF A CONJUNCTION.

A CONJUNCTION† is a part of speech that joineth words and sentences together: as, my father *and* my mother.

OF A PREPOSITION.

A PREPOSITION‡ is a part of speech most commonly set before another word; as, *ad dextram*, on

* Some adverbs, especially those derived from adjectives, admit of comparison; as *doctè*, *doctius*, *doctissime*; *bene*, *melius*, *optimè*; *sæpe*, *sæpius*, *sæpissime*; *diu*, *diutius*, *diutissime*; and many others.

† Though conjunctions in general may be considered as joining words and sentences together, they are likewise employed to show the manner of their dependence; as *venit ut me liberaret*, he came to set me free.

‡ 1. Some prepositions are joined to certain nouns, verbs, and adverbs, in composition; as *prælectio*, *subscribo*, *perbrevisiter*.

2. These five, *am*, *con*, *dis*, *re*, *se*, are called inseparable prepositions, being used in composition only.

the right hand: or else is joined in composition: as *in-doctus*, unlearned.

These Prepositions have an Accusative case after them.

<i>Ad</i> , to or at.	<i>Penès</i> , in the power of.
<i>Adversùm, adversùs</i> , against.	<i>Per</i> , by or through.
<i>Ante</i> , before.	<i>Ponè</i> , behind.
<i>Apud</i> , at, or near.	<i>Post</i> , after or since.
<i>Circa, Circum, Circiter</i> , about.	<i>Præter</i> , beside or except.
<i>Cis, Citra</i> , on this side.	<i>Prope</i> , nigh or near to.
<i>Contra</i> , against.	<i>Propter</i> , for or because of.
<i>Erga</i> , toward.	<i>Secundùm</i> , according to.
<i>Extra</i> , without.	<i>Secus</i> , by or along.
<i>Infra</i> , beneath.	<i>Supra</i> , above.
<i>Inter</i> , between or among.	<i>Trans</i> , on the further side.
<i>Intra</i> , within.	<i>Versùs</i> , toward.
<i>Juxta</i> , beside or nigh to.	<i>Ultra</i> , beyond.
<i>Ob</i> , for or because of.	<i>Usque</i> , until.

Obs. *Versùs* is set after its case, as *Londinunt versùs*, towards London.

Likewise *penès* and *usque* may be so placed.

The Prepositions following have an Ablative case after them.

<i>A, Ab, Abs</i> , from or by.	<i>Palam</i> , openly.
<i>Absque</i> , without.	<i>Præ</i> , before or in com-
<i>Coram</i> , before or in presence of.	parison of.
<i>Cum</i> , with.	<i>Pro</i> , for.
<i>De</i> , of or from.	<i>Sine</i> , without.
<i>E, Ex</i> , of, from, or out of.	<i>Tenus</i> , up to or as far as.

Obs. *Tenus* is set after its case; as *portâ tenus*, as far as the gate; and in the plural number the noun is commonly put in the genitive case; as *aurium tenus*, up to the ears.

The Prepositions following serve to both cases:

Clam, unknown to; as *clam patrem*, or *patre*, without my father's knowledge.

In for *into*, signifying motion, has an Accusative case; as *eo in urbem*, I go into the city.

In, for *in* only, serves to the Ablative case; as *in te spes est*, my hope is in thee.

Sub: as *sub noctem*, a little before night.

sub iudice lis est, the matter is before the judge.

Subter: as *subter terram*, under the earth.

subter aqua, under the water.

Super: as *super lapidem*, upon a stone.

super viridi fronde, upon a green bough.

OF AN INTERJECTION.

AN INTERJECTION* is a part of speech which betokeneth a sudden motion of the mind, be it grief, or joy, or other passion.

THE THREE CONCORDS EXPLAINED.

THERE are three Concords or Agreements in Latin.

1. Between the nominative case and the verb.
2. Between the substantive and the adjective.
3. Between the antecedent and the relative.

THE FIRST CONCORD.

A Verb agreeth with its nominative case, in number and person.

In order to find out the nominative case, ask the question *who?* or *what?* with the verb; and the word

* Interjections expressing the milder emotions of the mind, or passions without violence, very nearly approach to the nature of adverbs.

that

that answereth to the question is the nominative case to the verb ; as *who reads? who regards not?*

The *master* reads, but *ye* regard not,
Præceptor ^blegit, *vos* verò ^bnegligitis.

Sometimes an infinitive mood, or a sentence, is the nominative case to a verb ; and sometimes the substantive to an adjective ; and sometimes the antecedent to a relative : and in this case the adjective and the relative must be in the neuter gender ; as,

Diluculo ^asurgere saluberrimum ^best.

To rise betimes in the morning is most wholesome.

In tempore veni, ^bquod omnium est primum.

I came in season, which is the chief thing of all.

Many nominative cases singular have a verb plural, which agrees with the nominative case of the most worthy person. *And note*, That the first person is more worthy than the second, and the second more worthy than the third ; as,

Ego et ^btu ^csumus in tuto.

I and thou are in safety.

The substantive which cometh next after the verb, and answereth to the question *whom* or *what*, made by the verb, shall commonly be the accusative case ; except the verb, by some particular rule, requires another case after it ; as,

Si cupis ^aplacere ^bmagistro, ^autere ^bdiligentiâ.

If you desire to please the master, use diligence.

Obs. In this example *magistro* is the dative, and *diligentiâ* the ablative case, according to rule.

THE SECOND CONCORD.

WHEN you have an adjective, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the adjective, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the substantive to the adjective.

The adjective, whether it be a noun, pronoun, or
 participle

participle, agreeth with its substantive in case, gender, and number ; as,

^a*Amicus* ^b*certus* in ^a*re* ^b*incertâ* cernitur.

A sure friend is tried in a doubtful matter.

Obs. 1. The masculine gender is more worthy than the feminine, and the feminine more worthy than the neuter. *Also note*, that in things without life, the neuter gender is most worthy ; and in this case, though the substantive or antecedent be of the masculine or feminine gender, and not of the neuter, yet may the adjective or relative be put in the neuter ; as,

^a*Arcus* et ^a*calami* sunt ^b*bona*.

The bow and arrows are good.

^a*Arcus* et ^a*calami* ^b*quæ* fregisti.

The bow and arrows *which* thou hast broken.

Obs. 2. Many substantives singular will have an adjective plural, which adjective shall agree with the substantive of the most worthy gender ; as,

^a*Rex* et ^a*regina* ^b*beati*.

The king and the queen are blessed.

Also, When in English the word *thing* is put with an adjective, you may in Latin leave out the substantive, and put the adjective in the neuter gender ; as,

Multa me impedierunt.

Many *things* have hindered me.

THE THIRD CONCORD.

WHEN you have a relative, ask this question, *who?* or *what?* with the verb, and the word that answereth to the question shall be the antecedent to the relative.

The relative agreeth with its antecedent in gender, number, and person ; as ^a

^a*Vir* sapit, ^b*qui* pauca loquitur.

The man is wise, *who* speaketh few words.

Obs.

Obs. 1. If the relative refers to two antecedents, or more, then it shall be put in the plural number; as,

Tu multum ^a*dormis*, *et sæpe* ^a*potas*; ^b*quæ* ^b*ambo sunt corpori inimica.*

Thou sleepest much, and drinkest often; *both which* things are naught for the body.

Obs. 2. When the English word *that* may be turned into *who* or *which*, it is a relative: otherwise it is a conjunction, expressed in Latin by *quod* or *ut*; and in making Latin, the conjunction may be put away, by turning the nominative case to the verb into the accusative, and the verb into the infinitive mood; as, *Gaudeo* ^a*quod tu bene* ^b*vales*; or, *gaudeo* ^a*te bene* ^b*valere.* I am glad *that* thou art in good health.

A PARADIGM, or general TABLE of VERBS, throughout the several Moods and Tenses, by which all Verbs Regular are formed, according to their respective Conjugations.

1. The ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mood.

Present Tense; *do, am.*

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Conjug.</i>	1. o,	as,	at.	ámus,	átis,	ant.
	2. eo,	es,	et.	émus,	étis,	ent.
	3. o,	is,	it.	imus,	itis,	unt.
	4. io,	is,	it.	imus,	itis,	iunt.

Preterimperfect Tense; *did, was.*

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. ábam,	ábas,	ábat.	abámus,	abátis,	ábant.
	2. 3. ébam,	ébas,	ébat.	ebámus,	ebátis,	ébant.
	4. iébam,	iébas,	iébat.	iebámus,	iebátis,	iebant.

Preterperfect Tense; *have**

<i>Conjug.</i>	} i,	isti,	it.	imus, istis, érunt, or ére.		
1. 2. 3. 4.						

* The several Terminations of this Tense are the same in the four Conjugations; and note, the Preterpluperfect Tense that next follows; and also other Tenses of the Potential and Infinitive Moods, are derived from this Preterperfect Tense, as is observed page 19.

Preter-

Preterpluperfect Tense ; *had*.

<i>Conjug.</i>	} eram, eras, erat.	} erámus, erátis, erant.
1.		
2.		
3. 4.		

Future Tense ; *shall or will*.

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. ábo,	ábis,	ábit.	abimus,	abitis,	ábunt.
	2. ébo,	ébis,	ébit.	ebimus,	ebitis,	ébunt.
	3. am,	es,	et.	émus,	étis,	ent.
	4. iam,	ies,	iet.	iemus,	iétis,	ient.

Imperative Mood ; *let*.

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. a,	ato ;	et,	áto.	émus ;	áte,	atóte ;	ent,	ánto.
	2. e,	éto ;	eat,	éto.	eámus ;	éte,	etóte ;	eant,	énto.
	3. e,	ito ;	at,	ito.	ámus ;	ite,	itóte ;	ant,	ánto.
	4. i,	íto ;	iat,	íto.	íámus ;	ite,	itóte ;	iant,	ínto.

Potential or Subjunctive Mood.

Present Tense ; *may or can*.

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. em,	es,	et.	émus,	étis,	ent.
	2. eam,	eas,	eat.	eámus,	eátis,	eant.
	3. am,	as,	at.	ámus,	átis,	ant.
	4. iam,	ias,	iat.	íámus,	íátis,	iant.

Preterimperfect Tense ; *might, could, should*.

<i>Conjug.</i>	1. árem,	áres,	áret.	arémus,	arétiſ,	arent.
	2. érem,	eres,	éret.	} erémus, erétis,	érent.	
	3. erem,	eres,	eret.		erent.	
	4. írem,	íres,	íret.		írent.	

Preterperfect Tense ; *should have, may have*.

<i>Conj.</i>	1. 2. 3. 4. erim, eris, erit.	erimus, eritis, erint.
--------------	-------------------------------	------------------------

Preterpluperfect Tense ; *would, might, could have*.

<i>Conj.</i>	1. 2. 3. 4. íssem, ísses, ísset.	íssémus, íssétis, íssent.
--------------	----------------------------------	---------------------------

Future Tense ; *shall have*.

<i>Conj.</i>	1. 2. 3. 4. ero, eris, erit.	erimus, eritis, erint.
--------------	------------------------------	------------------------

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterimperf. 1. äre. 2. ëre. 3. ëre. 4. ïre.

Preterp. and Preterplup. isse.

Future, rum esse *vel* fuisse.

Gerunds, di, do, dum.

Supines, um, u.

Participle of the Pres. Tense, 1. ans. 2. ens. 3. ens. 4. iens.

Participle future in rus, rus.

2. PASSIVE

2. PASSIVE VOICE.

*Indicative Mood.*Present Tense; *am.*

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>Conjug.</i> 1. or; áris or áre; atur.	ámur,	amini,	ántur.	
2. eor; éris or ére; étur.	émur,	emini,	éntur.	
3. or; eris or ere; itur.	imur,	imini,	úntur.	
4. ior; íris or íre; ítur.	ímur,	imini,	íúntur.	

Preterimperfect Tense; *was.*

<i>Conjug.</i> 1. ábar; ábaris or abáre; abámur,	abamini,	abántur.
abátur.		
2. 3. ébar; ebáris or ebáre; ebámur,	ebamini,	ebántur.
ebátur.		
4. iébar; iébaris or iebámur,	iebamini,	iebántur.
iebáre; iebátur.		

Preterperfect Tense; *have been.*

<i>Conjug.</i> } us sum or fui; es or i sumus or fuimus; i estis or	
1.2.3.4. } fuisti; est or fuit.	fuistis; i sunt, fuérunt, or fuére.

Preterpluperfect Tense; *had been.*

<i>Conjug.</i> } us eram or fueram; i erámus or fuerámus; erátis	
1.2.3.4. } eras or fueras; erat or fuerátis; erant or fuerant.	

Future Tense; *shall or will be.*

<i>Conjug.</i> 1. ábor; aberis or ab- ere; ebitur.	abimur,	abimini,	abúntur.
2. ébor; eberis or eb- ere; abitur.	ebimur,	ebimini,	ebúntur.
3. ar; éris or ére; étur.	emur,	emini,	éntur.
4. iar; iéris or iére; iétur.	iemur,	iemini,	iéntur.

Imperative Mood; *let.*

<i>Conjug.</i> 1. áre, átor; étur,	émur; amini, aminor; éntur,
átor.	ántor.
3. ére, étor; eátur,	eámur; emini, emenor; éantur,
étor.	éntor.
3. ere, itor; átur, itor.	ámur; imini, iminor; ántur,
	úntor.
4. íre, ítor; iátur,	iámur; imini, iminor; iántur,
ítor.	iúntor.

Potential

*Potential or Subjunctive Mood.*Present Tense ; *may or can be.*

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Conjug. 1.	er ; éris or ére ; étur.	émur,	emini,	éntur.
2.	ear ; eáris or eáre ; eátur.	eámur,	eamini,	eántur.
3.	ar ; áris or áre ; átur.	ámur,	amini,	ántur.
4.	iar ; iáris or iáre ; iátur.	iámur,	iamini,	iántur.

Preterimperfect Tense ; *might, could, should be.*

Conjug. 1.	árer ; aréris or arére ; arétur.	arémur,	aremini,	aréntur.
2.	érer ; } eréris or e- 3. erer ; } rére ; erétur.	erémur,	eremini,	eréntur.
4.	írer ; íréris or írére ; írétur.	írémur,	iremini,	iréntur.

Preterperfect Tense ; *may or should have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4.	us sim or fuerim ; sis or fueris ; sit or fuerit.	i simus or fuerimus ; sitis or fueritis ; sint or fuerint.
----------------	---	--

Preterpluperfect Tense ; *would, might, could have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4.	us essem or fuiss- sem ; esses or fuisses ; esset or fuisset.	i essemus or fuiss- semus ; essetis or fuissetis ; essent or fuissent.
----------------	--	---

Future Tense ; *shall have been.*

Conj. 1.2.3.4.	us ero or fuero ; eris or fueris ; erit or fuerit.	i erimus or fuerimus ; eritis or fueritis ; erunt or fuerint.
----------------	--	---

Infinitive Mood.

Present and Preterimperf. 1. íri. 2. éri. 3. i. 4. íri.

Preterperf. and Preterpluperf. um esse or fuisse.

Future, um iri or fore.

Participle of the Preterp. Tense, us. Future in dus, dus.

Note, *Verbs in io of the 3d Conj. form the pres. ind. and pot. the preterimp. and fut. ind. the imperat. (except the 2d p. sing.) and the gerunds, like verbs of the 4th. But in the 2d. p. sing. imperat. the preterimp. pot. and pres. infin. they are not so declined. Thus fodio makes fodiunt, 3d pers. pl. ind. fodiebam, &c. imp. ind. fodiendi, &c. gerunds, but fode 2nd sing. imperative, fodere, &c. imp. potent. and fodere, pres. inf.*

OF THE
GENDERS OF NOUNS.

1. SUBSTANTIVES.

PROPER NAMES.

1. Masculine.

PROPRIA, quæ maribus tribuuntur, mascula dicas ;
Ut sunt Divorum ; Mars, Bacchus, Apollo : *Virorum* ;
Ut, Cato, Virgilius : *Fluviorum* ; *ut*, Tibris, Orontes :
Mensium ; *ut*, October : *Ventorum* ; *ut*, Libs, Notus,
Auster.

2. Feminine.

PROPRIA fæmineum referentia nomina sexum,
Fæmineo generi tribuuntur ; sive *Dearum*
Sunt ; *ut*, Juno, Venus : *Muliebria* ; *ut*, Anna, Philotis :
Urbium ; *ut*, Elis, Opus : *Regionum* ; *ut*, Græcia, Persis :
Insulæ item nomen ; *ceu*, Creta, Britannia, Cyprus.

Excipienda tamen quædam sunt urbium ; *ut ista*
Mascula ; Sulmo, Agragas : *quædam neutralia* ; *ut*, Argos,
Tibur, Præneste : *et genus Anxur quod dat utrumque*.

NOUNS APPELLATIVE.

1. Feminine Gender.

APPELLATIVA Arborum erunt muliebria ; *ut*, alnus,
Cupressus, cedrus. *Mas spinus, mas oleaster* :
Et sunt neutra, siler, suber, thus, robur, acérque.

2. Epicene Gender.

SUNT etiam *Volucrum* ; *ceu*, passer, hirundo : *Ferarum* ;
Ut, tigris, vulpes : *et Piscium* : *ut*, ostrea, cetus,
Dicta epicæna ; quibus vox ipsa genus feret aptum.

3. Neuter Gender.

ATTAMEN ex cunctis suprà reliquisque notandum,
Onne quod exit in um, seu Græcum sive Latinum,
Esse genus neutrum ; sic invariabile nomen.

THE FIRST SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS not increasing.

Feminine.

NOMEN non crescens genitivo ; ceu, caro carnis, Capra capræ, nubes nubis ; genus est muliebre.

1. NOUNS Masculine excepted.

MASCULA nomina in a dicuntur multa virorum ;

Ut, scribe, assecla, scurra, et rabula, lixa, lanista.

Mascula, Græcorum quot declinatio prima

Fundit in as, et in es, et ab illis quot per a fiunt :

Ut, satrapas satrapa, athletes athleta. Leguntur

Mascula item, verres, natalis, aqualis : Ab asse

Nata ; ut, centussis : conjunge lienis, et orbis,

Callis, caulis, follis, collis, mensis, et ensis,

Fustis, funis, cenchris, panis, crinis, et ignis ;

Cassis, fascis, torris, sentis, piscis, et unguis,

Et vermis, vectis, postis ; societur et axis.

Mascula in er ; ceu, venter : in os, vel us ; ut legos, annus.

Fæminei at generis sunt, mater, humus, domus, alvus,

Et colus, et quartæ pro fructu ficus, acûsque,

Porticus atque tribus, socrus, nurus, et manus, idus ;

Huc anus addenda est, huc mystica vannus Iacchi.

His jungas os in us vertentia Græca ; papyrus,

Antidotus, costus, diphthongus, byssus, abyssus,

Crystallus, synodus, sapphirus, eremus, et Arctus,

Cum multis aliis, quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

2. NOUNS Neuter excepted.

NEUTRUM nomen in e, si gignit is, ut, mare, retè ;

Et, quot in on, per i flexa legas ; ut barbiton, adde.

Est neutrum hippomanes genus, et neutrum cacoëthes,

Et virus, pelagus : neutrum modò, mas modò, vulgus.

3. NOUNS of the doubtful Gender excepted.

INCERTI generis sunt talpa, et dama, canalis,

Et cytissus, balanus, clunis, finis, penus, amnis,

Pampinus,

Pampinus, et corbis, linter, torquis, specus, anguis,
Pro morbo ficus fici dans, atque phaselus,
 Lecythus, ac atomus, grossus, pharus, et paradisus.

4. NOUNS of the Common of two Genders excepted.

COMPOSITUM à verbo dans a, commune duorum est ;
 Grajugena à gigno, agricola à colo, id advena monstrant
A venio : Add senex, auriga, et verna, sodalis,
 Vates, extorris, patruelis, perque duellis,
 Affinis, juvenis, testis, civis, canis, hostis.

THE SECOND SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS increasing long.

Feminine.

NOMEN, crescentis penultima si genitivi
Syllaba acuta sonat, velut hæc, pietas, pietätis,
Virtus, virtütis, monstrant ; genus est muliebre.

1. NOUNS Masculine excepted.

MASCULA dicuntur monosyllaba nomina quædam :
 Sal, sol, ren, et splen, Car, Ser, vir, vas vadis, as, mas,
 Bes, Cres, præ, et pes, glis gliris *habens genitivo :*
 Mos, flos, ros, et Tros, mus, dens, mons, pons, *simul et*
 fons,

Seps *pro serpente*, gryps, Thrax, rex, grex gregis, et Phryx.

Mascula sunt etiam polysyllaba in n ; ut, Acarnan,
 Lichen, et delphin : *Et in o signantia corpus ;*
 Ut, leo, curculio : sic senio, ternio, sermo.

Mascula in er, or, et os : cœu crater, conditor, heros :

His, torrens, nefrens, oriens, conjunge cliénsque :

Atque bidens instrumentum, cum pluribus in dens :

Adde gigas, elephas, adamas, Garamásque, tapésque,

Atque lebes, sic et magnæ, unumque meridi-

es nomen quintæ : et quæ componantur ab asse,

Ut dodrans, semis : jungantur mascula ; Samnis,

Hydrops, et thorax : jungas quæque mascula ; vervex,

Phoenix, et bombyx pro vermiculo. Attamen ex his

Sunt muliebre genus, Siren, necnon, soror, uxor.

2. NOUNS

2. NOUNS NEUTER excepted.

SUNT neutralia et hæc monosyllaba nomina; mel, fel, Lac, far, ver, æs, cor, vas vasis, os ossis, et oris, Rus, thus, jus, crus, pus. Et in al polysyllaba, in arque, Ut, Capital, laquear. Neutrum, al-ec, ex muliebre.

3. NOUNS of the Doubtful Gender excepted.

SUNT dubii generis, scrobs, serpens, bubo, rudens, grus, Perdix, lynx, limax, stirps pro trunco, pedis et calx : Adde dies, numero tantum mas esto secundo.

4. NOUNS of the Common of two Genders excepted.

SUNT commune, parens, auctorque, infans, adolescens, Dux, illex, hæres, exlex : à fronte creata ; Ut, bifrons : custos, bos, fur, sus, atque sacerdos.

THE THIRD SPECIAL RULE.

NOUNS increasing short.

Masculine.

NOMEN, crescentis penultima si genitivi Sit gravis, ut sanguis genitivo sanguinis, est mas.

1. NOUNS Feminine excepted.

FÆMINEI generis sit hyperdissyllabon in do, Quod dinis, atque in go, quod dat ginis, in genitivo. Id tibi dulcedo faciens dulcedinis : idque Monstrat, compago compaginis : adjice virgo, Grando, fides, compes, teges, et seges, arbor, hyemsque ; Sic chlamys, et sindon, Gorgon, icon, et Amazon. Græcula in as, vel in is, finita : ut, lampas, iaspis, Cassia, cuspis ; item mulier, pecus et pecudis dans : His forfex, pellex, carex, simul atque supellex, Appendix, hyatrix, coxendix, adde filixque.

2. NOUNS Neuter excepted.

EST neutrale genus signans rem non animatam Nomen in a, ut problema ; en, ut omen ; ar, ut jubar ; ur dans, Ut jecur ; us, ut onus ; put, ut occiput. Attamen ex his Mascula

Mascula sunt, pecten, furfur. Sunt neutra, cadaver, Verber, iter, suber, pro fungo tuber, et uber, Gingiber, et laser, cicer, et piper, atque papaver, Et siser: his addas neutra, æquor, marmor, adôrque; Atque pecus quando pecoris facit in genitivo.

3. NOUNS of the Doubtful Gender excepted.

SUNT dubii generis, cardo, margo, cinis, obex, Forceps, pumex, imbrex, cortex, pulvis, adépsque, Adde culex, natrix, et onyx cum prole, siléxque, Quamvis hæc meliùs vult mascula dicier usus.

4. NOUNS Common excepted.

COMMUNIS generis sunt ista; vigil, pugil, exul, Præsul, homo, nemo, martyr, Ligur, augur, et Arcas; Antistes, miles, pedes, interpretes, comes, hospes; Sic ales, præses, princeps, auceps, eques, obses; Atque alia à verbis quæ nomina multa creantur; Ut, conjux, judex, vindex, opifex, et aruspex.

II. ADJECTIVES.

ADJECTIVA unam duntaxat habentia vocem, Ut, felix, audax; retinent genus omne sub und: Sub geminâ si voce cadant, velut, omnis et omne, Vox commune dũm prior est, vox altera neutrum: At si tres variant voces; sacer ut, sacra, sacrum; Vox prima est mas, altera fœmina, tertia neutrum.

Obs. 1. *At sunt quæ flexu propè substantiva vocares, Adjectiva tamen naturâ usũque reperta: Talia sunt pauper, puber, cum degener, uber, Et dives, locuples, sospes, comes, atque superstes: Cum paucis aliis, quæ lectio justa docebit.*

Obs. 2. *Hæc proprium quendam sibi flexum adsciscere gaudent;*

Campester, volucer, celeberrimus, celer, atque saluber; Junge pedester, equester, et acer: junge paluster, Ac alacer, sylvester: At hæc tu sic variabis; Hic celer, hæc celeris, neutro hoc celere: Aut aliter sic, Hic atque hæc celeris, rursum hoc celere est tibi neutrum.

OF NOUNS HETEROCLITE; OR IRREGULAR.*

QUÆ genus aut flexum variant, *quæcunque novato Ritu* deficiunt, *superantive*, HETEROCLITA sunt.

NOUNS

* The ETON rules for heteroclites being very short, and in most schools passed over, as being either unnecessary, or insufficient; it has been thought proper to give a connected view of this part of grammar, that when any difficulty occurs, the scholar may know where to find a solution of it.

1. HETEROCLITES are nouns which differ from the common way of declining, by being VARIANT, REDUNDANT, or DEFECTIVE.

2. VARIANTS change their gender or declension; REDUNDANTS have different endings, or ways of declining; DEFECTIVES want either case or number.

1. VARIANTS.

1. The masculines *Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Imarus*, *Massicus*, *Mænalus*, *Pangæus*, *Tænarus*, *Tartarus*, *Taygetus*, and the two feminine *carbasus*, *Pergamus*, are neuter in the plural: *jocus* and *locus* are masculine and neuter: as, S. N. *hic Avernus*, G. *Avernī*, &c. P. N. *hæc Avernæ*, G. *Avernorum*, &c. S. N. *hic jocus*, G. *joci*, &c. P. N. *hi joci*, and *hæc joca*, G. *jocorum*, &c.

2. *Cælum*, *Elysium*, *Argos*, are masculine in the plural; *frænum* and *rastrum*, masculine and neuter: as S. N. *hoc cælum*, G. *cæli*, &c. P. N. *hi cæli*, G. *cælorum*, D. *cælis*, Ac. *cælos*, &c. S. N. *hoc frænum*, G. *fræni*, &c. Pl. *hi fræni*, and *hæc fræna*.

3. *Delicium* and *epulum* are of the first declension in the plural; *balneum* is both of the first and second; as S. N. *hoc delicium*, &c. *hoc balneum*, &c. P. N. *hæc balneæ*, vel *hæc balnea*, &c.

4. *Vas*, a vessel, becomes of the second declension in the plural; as S. N. *hoc vas*, G. *vasis*, D. *vasi*, A. *vas*, Ab. *vase*. P. N. *hæc vasa*, G. *vasorum*, D. *vasis*, &c.

5. Greek nouns in *ma*, as *poëma*, *epigramma*, in the dative and ablative plural take also the form of the second declension; as P. N. *hæc poëmata*, G. *poëmatum*, v. *poëmatum*, D. *poëmatibus*, v. *poëmatibus*, &c.

6. These vary their senses in the singular and plural number; *rostrum*, *fortuna*, *facultas*, *mos*, *opis*, *ædes*; so *sal* and *divus*.

II. REDUNDANTS.

1. The following nouns and many others, have different endings in the nominative, but retain the same sense.

<i>accipies</i> ,	<i>cassis</i> ,	<i>exanimis</i> ,	<i>imbecillis</i> ,	<i>oda</i> ,	<i>scrobit</i> ,
<i>accipivus</i> ;	<i>cassida</i> ;	<i>exanimus</i> ;	<i>imbecillus</i> ;	<i>ode</i> ;	<i>scrobs</i> ;
<i>arbor</i> ,	<i>conger</i> ,	<i>gruis</i> ,	<i>labor</i> ,	<i>odor</i> ,	<i>sensus</i> ,
<i>arbos</i> ;	<i>congrus</i> ;	<i>grus</i> ;	<i>labos</i> ;	<i>odos</i> ;	<i>sensum</i> ;
<i>baculus</i> ,	<i>crater</i> ,	<i>honor</i> ,	<i>menda</i> ,	<i>puer</i> ,	<i>vomis</i> ,
<i>baculum</i> ;	<i>cratæra</i> ;	<i>honor</i> ;	<i>mendum</i> ;	<i>pubes</i> ;	<i>vomer</i> .

2. These, with one ending, have different senses: *calx*, *malum*, *malus*, *palus*, &c. *Domus* is of the second and fourth declensions; as S. N. *hæc domus*; G. *i v. ðs*; D. *o v. ui*; Ac. *um*; V. *us*; Ab. *o v. u*. P. N. *hæc domus*; G. *orum* v. *um*; D. *ibus*; Ac. *os v. us*; V. *us*; Ab. *ibus*. It wants

NOUNS changing their Gender and Declining.

HÆC genus, *ac*, flexum, *partim variantia cernis* ;
Pergamus in numero plurali Pergama gignit.

Dat

me in the singular, *mi* and *mis* in the plural. *Cotus, ficus, laurus, pinus*, of the second, make also *u* in the ablative, and *us* in the plural cases. *Quercus*, of the fourth, makes *quercorum*, as well as *quercuum*, and *versus* in the plural *versu, versorum, versis*, as well as the regular cases.

3. *Chremes, Dares, Laches, Thales*, make *is* and *dis* in the genitive ; *Calchas, æ* and *antis* ; *Bootes, Euphrates, Oristes, æ* and *is* ; *requies, dis* and *idi* ; *plebes, plebis* and *plebei* ;—with many more.

III. DEFECTIVES.

DEFECTIVES IN CASE.

1. Aptots.

1. All nouns in *u* are aptots in the singular, but regular in the plural ; as *cornu*.

2. Nouns in *t* are aptots in both numbers : as *gummi*, so likewise *pondo*.
 3. The adjectives *nequam, frugi*, are aptots in both numbers. The substantives *semis, frit, gut, cepe, gausape*, are singular aptots ; and the adjectives *tot, quot*, with their compounds *totidem, aliquot, &c.*, and numerals from *quatuor* to *centum*, are plural aptots ; as, S. N. *hoc gummi*, P. N. *hæc gummi*, undeclined. S. N. *hic, hæc, hoc, nequam*. P. N. *hi, hæ, hæc, nequam*, undeclined. S. N. *hoc, semis*, undeclined. P. N. *hi, hæ, hæc, tot*, undeclined. The adjective *mille* is a plural aptot : as *hi, hæ, hæc, mille*, undeclined : the substantive *mille* is an aptot in the singular, but regular in the plural ; as, S. N. *hoc mille*, undeclined. P. N. *hæc millia, G. tum, D. ibus, Ac. ia, &c.*

2. Monoaptots.

1. These have only a nominative case : *Eos, damnas, iniquies, esspes, hic et hæc potis, hoc pote* ; or *hic, hæc, hoc, potis*.

2. *Dicis* and *nauci* have only the genitive ; *despicatus, ostentui*, the dative only ; and these the ablative only ; *ergo* for *causa, accitu, natu, noctu, jussu, injussu, promptu*, and *permissu*. *Inficias, incitas*, are the accusative plural : as, *inficias eo, ad incitas reductus. Ingratus* or *ingratis* is the ablative.

3. The masculines *casse, calite, annali*, and the feminine *fauce*, have only the ablative case in the singular number, but are entire in the plural. To these add the feminine *ambage*, which wants the genitive plural ; as S. Ab. *hoc casse*. P. N. *hi casses, G. ium, D. ibus, Ac. es, Ab. ibus*, S. Ab. *hæc ambage*. P. N. *es, D. ibus, Ac. es, V. es, Ab. ibus*.

3. Diptots.

1. N. Ab. *hoc necesse, necessum, volupe, instar, hir, astu* when it signifies a city. N. *astus*, Ab. *astu*, craft. N. *siremps*, Ab. *sirempse*.

2. G. *impetis*, Ab. *impete* : Ab. Pl. *impetibus*. G. *spontis*, Ab. *sponte*. G. *verberis*, Ab. *verbere* ; G. *jugeriis*, Ab. *jugere*, both entire in the plural ; as, P. N. *hæc verbera, G. um, D. ibus, &c.*

3. Add G. *compedis*, Ab. *compede*, wanting the genitive in the plural. G. Pl. *repetundarum*, Ab. *repetundis*. N. *suppetia*, Ac. *suppetias* : N. *infiræ*, Ac. *infirias*.

4. Triptots

*Dat prior his numerus neutrum genus, alter utrumque,
Rastrum cum freno, filum simul atque capistrum :
Argos item, et coelum, sunt singula neutra : sed audi;
Mascula*

4. Triptots.

1. *Fas, nefas, nihil, nil*, and *secus*, when of the third declension ; also *epos, cacosthes, hippomanes*, and other Greek neuters in *es*, have only the N. Ac. V. singular.

2. The neuters *cete, Tempe, mele, pelage*, have only the N. Ac. V. plural ; and N. *vesper*, Ac. *vesperem*, Ab. *vespere*, singular.

3. *Tantundem, tantidem*, has the N. G. and Ac. singular : '*mane*, N. Ac. and Ab. singular ; sometimes *mani* in the Ab. *Dica* has the accusative singular *dicam*, and G. *feminis* makes D. *i*, Ab. *e*. Pl. N. Ac. V. *femina*. D. *precī*, Ac. *precem*, Ab. *prece*, is entire in the plural.

4. *Rus, thus, sel, mei, hyems, hilum, solium, far, ebur, metus, spes, species, acies, facies, glacies, effigies, eluvies*, have only the N. Ac. V. in the plural.

5. Tetraptots.

1. *Ditionis, frugis, opis, pecudis, sordis, vicis*, want the nominative, and consequently the vocative. Note, *ditionis* wants the plural, *vicis* wants the genitive plural, and *opis* signifies wealth and power in that number.

6. Pentaptots.

1. *Chaos, melos, satias*, want the genitive singular ; and *os*, a mouth, with *fax, sol, vicis, labes, soboles, proles, grates*, want the genitive plural. *Plus* and defective pronouns were mentioned before.

DEFECTIVES IN NUMBER.

1. Singulars.

1. Proper names of men and women, also proper names of places (except those which are only plural), with most names of virtues, vices, herbs, liquors, metals, and abstract qualities, most nouns of the fifth declension, and many others which are known by the sense, want the plural number : as, *Augustus, Livia, Roma, justitia, luxus, hyssopus, aurum, lac, nectar, senectus, macies, butyrum*.

The following nouns also want the plural :

<i>aër,</i>	<i>gypsum,</i>	<i>mundus, a wo- prolubium,</i>	<i>venia,</i>
<i>æther,</i>	<i>hepar,</i>	man's attire, <i>pubes,</i>	<i>ver,</i>
<i>album,</i>	<i>hesperus,</i>	<i>muscus,</i>	<i>pulvis,</i>
<i>argilla,</i>	<i>humus,</i>	<i>nectar,</i>	<i>pus,</i>
<i>barathrum,</i>	<i>jubar,</i>	<i>nemo,</i>	<i>sabulum,</i>
<i>cænum,</i>	<i>jugerum,</i>	<i>nilhilum,</i>	<i>sal,</i>
<i>crocum,</i>	<i>justitium,</i>	<i>nitrum,</i>	<i>salum,</i>
<i>diluculum,</i>	<i>lardum,</i>	<i>omissum,</i>	<i>salus,</i>
<i>fœnum,</i>	<i>lethum,</i>	<i>penum,</i>	<i>sanguis,</i>
<i>fmus,</i>	<i>ltnus,</i>	<i>penus,</i>	<i>senium,</i>
<i>gelu,</i>	<i>lucus,</i>	<i>pelagus,</i>	<i>sitis,</i>
<i>glarea,</i>	<i>lutum,</i>	<i>piper,</i>	<i>supelles,</i>
<i>glastum,</i>	<i>mane,</i>	<i>plebs,</i>	<i>tabes,</i>
<i>gluten,</i>	<i>meridies,</i>	<i>pontus,</i>	<i>tabum,</i>

These are sometimes found in the plural.

<i>bilis,</i>	<i>cutis,</i>	<i>fames,</i>	<i>labes,</i>	<i>pituita,</i>	<i>quies,</i>	<i>tallo,</i>
<i>cholera,</i>	<i>fama,</i>	<i>gloria,</i>	<i>pax,</i>	<i>pis,</i>	<i>ros,</i>	<i>tellus.</i>

III. Plurals

*Macula duntaxat cœlos vocitabis, et Argos:
Frena sed et frenos, quo pacto et cœtera formant.*

II. Plurals.

2. The names of several cities, books, feasts, and sciences, want the singular; as *Philippi, Athênæ, Bactra, Georgica, Bacchanalia, Olympia, musica.*

Add these particular nouns:

<i>acta,</i>	<i>fusces, sc.</i>	<i>manubiæ,</i>	<i>reposita,</i>
<i>affantiæ,</i>	Rom. Mag.	<i>mœnia,</i>	<i>rostra,</i>
<i>antes,</i>	<i>fasti, or fastus,</i>	<i>magallia, both of</i>	<i>sales, repartees,</i>
<i>apinæ,</i>	<i>facetia,</i>	the 3d.	<i>salebræ,</i>
<i>argutiæ,</i>	<i>feriæ,</i>	<i>minæ,</i>	<i>salinæ,</i>
<i>arma,</i>	<i>finæ, a territory,</i>	<i>minores,</i>	<i>scalæ,</i>
<i>æstiva,</i>	<i>flabra,</i>	<i>minutiæ,</i>	<i>scatebræ,</i>
<i>bellaria,</i>	<i>fori,</i>	<i>multitia,</i>	<i>scope,</i>
<i>bona,</i>	<i>fortunæ, forbona,</i>	<i>munia,</i>	<i>scruta,</i>
<i>brevia, of the</i>	<i>furfures, scurf,</i>	<i>natales,</i>	<i>sponsalia, of the</i>
third,	<i>Gargara,</i>	<i>nonæ,</i>	3d.
<i>calêndæ,</i>	<i>gerræ,</i>	<i>nugæ,</i>	<i>stativa,</i>
<i>cancelli,</i>	<i>hyberna,</i>	<i>nundinæ,</i>	<i>superi,</i>
<i>cani,</i>	<i>idus,</i>	<i>nuptiæ,</i>	<i>talaria, of the 3d.</i>
<i>castra,</i>	<i>ilia, of the 3d.</i>	<i>officiæ, tricks,</i>	<i>tenebræ,</i>
<i>Ceraunia, or</i>	<i>incunabula,</i>	<i>opes, riches,</i>	<i>tesqua,</i>
<i>Acroceraunia,</i>	<i>inferi,</i>	<i>pandectæ,</i>	<i>thermæ,</i>
<i>clitellæ,</i>	<i>induciæ,</i>	<i>parietinæ,</i>	<i>tori, the muscles,</i>
<i>codicilli,</i>	<i>induvia,</i>	<i>partes, a faction,</i>	<i>transtra,</i>
<i>comitia,</i>	<i>insidiæ,</i>	<i>parapherna,</i>	<i>tricæ,</i>
<i>crepundia,</i>	<i>justa,</i>	<i>pentætes,</i>	<i>trigæ,</i>
<i>cunæ,</i>	<i>lactes,</i>	<i>plagæ, signifying</i>	<i>valvæ,</i>
<i>cunabula,</i>	<i>lamenta,</i>	nets,	<i>vindicia,</i>
<i>decimæ,</i>	<i>lapicidinæ,</i>	<i>posterî,</i>	<i>vergiliæ,</i>
<i>diræ,</i>	<i>lautia,</i>	<i>phaleræ,</i>	Add the adjectives
<i>divitiæ,</i>	<i>Lemures,</i>	<i>præcordia,</i>	<i>ambo and pauci,</i>
<i>excubiæ,</i>	<i>lendes,</i>	<i>præstigiæ,</i>	with most ad-
<i>exequiæ,</i>	<i>Luceres,</i>	<i>primitiæ,</i>	jectives of num-
<i>exta,</i>	<i>lustra, dens of</i>	<i>principia,</i>	ber.
<i>exuvia,</i>	wild beasts,	<i>pugillares,</i>	
<i>facultates,</i>	<i>maiores,</i>	<i>reliquiæ,</i>	
for <i>opes,</i>	<i>manes,</i>		

These are sometimes found in the singular.

<i>angustiæ,</i>	<i>bigæ,</i>	<i>liberi,</i>	<i>proceres,</i>	<i>plerique,</i>
<i>artus,</i>	<i>charites,</i>	<i>mapalia,</i>	<i>quadrigæ,</i>	an adjective.
<i>aedes,</i>	<i>fores,</i>	<i>operæ,</i>	and	

In this place it may be proper to subjoin Adjectives of Number, or Numerals.

	1. The cardinal and ordinal numbers are,	
	Cardinals.	Ordinals.
I.	1 ---- <i>Unus</i>	----- <i>Primus,</i>
II.	2 ---- <i>duo</i>	----- <i>secundus,</i>
III.	3 ---- <i>tres</i>	----- <i>tertius,</i>
IV.	4 ---- <i>quatuor</i>	----- <i>quartus,</i>

Pluralis numerus genus his solet addere utrumque; Sibilus, atque jocus, locus.—His quoque plurima jungas.

V.	5	-----	quinque	-----	quintus
VI.	6	-----	sex	-----	sextus
VII.	7	-----	septem	-----	septimus
VIII.	8	-----	octo	-----	octavus
IX.	9	-----	novem	-----	nonus
X.	10	-----	decem	-----	decimus
XI.	11	-----	undecim,	-----	undecimus
XII.	12	-----	duodecim	-----	duodecimus
XIII.	13	-----	tredecim	-----	decimus tertius
XIV.	14	-----	quatuordecim	-----	decimus quartus
XV.	15	-----	quindecim	-----	decimus quintus
XVI.	16	-----	{ sexdecim, or } sedecim	-----	decimus sextus
XVII.	17	-----	septendecim	-----	decimus septimus
XVIII.	18	-----	octodecim	-----	{ decimus octavus, or duodevigintus
XIX.	19	-----	novemdecim	-----	decimus nonus
XX.	20	-----	viginti	-----	vigesimus
XXI.	21	-----	unus et viginti	-----	vigesimus primus, &c.
XXX.	30	-----	triginta	-----	trigesimus
XL.	40	-----	quadraginta	-----	quadragagesimus
L.	50	-----	quinquaginta	-----	quingagesimus
LX.	60	-----	sexaginta	-----	sexagesimus
LXX.	70	-----	septuaginta	-----	septuagesimus
LXXX.	80	-----	octoginta	-----	octogesimus
XC.	90	-----	nonaginta	-----	nonagesimus
C.	100	-----	centum	-----	centesimus
CC.	200	-----	ducenti	-----	ducentessimus
CCC.	300	-----	trecenti	-----	trecentessimus
CCCC.	400	-----	quadringenti	-----	quadringentesimus
D.	500	-----	quingenti	-----	quingentesimus
DC.	600	-----	sexcenti	-----	sexcentessimus
DCC.	700	-----	septingenti	-----	septingentesimus
DCCC.	800	-----	octingenti	-----	octingentesimus
DCCCC.	900	-----	{ nongenti, or } nongenti	-----	nongentesimus
M.	1000	-----	mille	-----	millesimus
MM.	2000	-----	{ duo millia, or } bis mille	-----	bis millesimus, &c.

2. *Tres* is declined like the plural of *tristis*; other numerals from *quatuor* to *centum* are undeclined.

3. Distributives are *singuli, bini, terni, quaterni, quini, seni, &c.*—*Unde* and *duode* are joined to most even numbers increasing by tens, to express one or two less; as *undeviginti* 19:—*duodetriginta*, 28.

NOUNS

NOUNS defective.

QUÆ sequitur, manca est casu, númerove, propago.

I. Aptota, or NOUNS undeclined.

*QUÆ nulum variant casum ; ut, fas, nil, nihil, instar,
Multa et in u, simul i ; ut sunt hæc, cornúque, genúque,
Sic gummi, frugi: sic Tempe, tot, quot, et omnes
A tribus ad centum numeros: aptota vocabis.*

II. Monoptota, or NOUNS declined with one Case.

*ESTQUE monoptoton nomen, cui vox cadit una :
Ceu, noctu, natu, jussu, injussu, simul astu,
Promptu, permissu : plurali legimus astus ;
Legimus inficias, sed vox ea sola reperta est.*

III. Diptota, or NOUNS declined with two Cases.

*SUNT diptota, quibus duplex flexura remansit ;
Ut, fors forte dabit sexto, spontis quoque sponte ;
Jugeri et sexto dat jugere ; verberis autem
Verbere : suppetiæ quarto quoque suppetias dant ;
Tantundem dat tantidem, simul impetis et dat
Impete ;
Sic repetundarum repetundis. Verberis altero
Quatuor in numero casus cum jugere servant.*

IV. Triptota, or NOUNS declined with three Cases.

*THES quibus inflectis casus, triptota vocantur :
Sic opis est nostræ, fer opem legis, atque ope dignus :
Flecte preci, atque precem, petit et prece blandus amicam ;
At tantum recto frugis caret, et ditionis ;
Integra vox vis est, nisi desit fortè dativus :
His vicis atque vicem et jungas vice: plus quoque pluris
Plus habet et quarto: His numerus datur omnibus alter.*

V. NOUNS defective in the Plural Number.

*PROPRIA cuncta notes, quibus est natura coercens,
Plurima ne fuerint : alia et tibi multa legenti
Occurrent, numerum rarè excedentia primum.*

VI. Nouns defective in the Singular Number.

MASCULA sunt tantum numero contenta secundo,
 Manes, majores, cancelli, liberi, et antes,
 Lendes et lemures, fasti simul, atque minores,
 Cum genus assignant natales; adde penates,
 Et loca plurali, quales Gabiique, Locrique,
 Et quaecunque legas passim similis rationis.

Hæc sunt feminei generis, numerique secundi;
 Exuviæ, phaleræ, gratæque, manubiæ, et idus,
 Antiæ, et induciæ: simul insidiæque, minæque,
 Excubiæ, nonæ, nugæ, tricæque, calendæ,
 Quisquiliæ, thermæ, cunæ, diræ, exequiæque,
 Feriæ, et inferiæ; sic primitiæque, plagæque,
 Retia signantes, et valvæ, divitiæque,
 Nuptiæ item, et lactes; addantur Thebæ et Athenæ,
 Quod genus invenias et nomina plura locorum.

Rariùs hæc primo pluralia neutra leguntur:
 Mœnia, cum tesquis, præcordia, lustra ferarum,
 Arma, mapalia; sic bellaria, munia, castra;
 Funus justa petit, petit et sponsalia virgo;
 Rostra disertus amat, puerique crepundia gestant,
 Infantisque colunt cunabula; consulit exta
 Augur, et absolvens superis effata recantat;
 Festa deum poterunt, ceu Bacchanalia, jungi:
 Quod si plura leges, licet hæc quoque classe reponas.

Nouns declined after both the second and fourth declension.

HÆC simul et quarti flexus sunt atque secundi;
 Laurus enim lauri facit et laurûs genitivo,
 Sic quercus, pinus, pro fructu ac arbore ficus,
 Sic colus, atque penus, cornus quando arbor habetur,
 Sic lacus atque domus: licet hæc nec ubique recurrant.
 His quoque plura leges, quæ priscis jure relinquas.

OF THE
PRETERPERFECT TENSE,
AND
SUPINES OF VERBS.

I. Of the Preterperfect Tense of simple Verbs.

THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

As—————*avi.*

AS in præsenti perfectum format in avi :
Ut no nas navi, vocito vocitas vocitavi.
Deme lavo lavi, juvo juvi, nexóque nexui,
Et seco quod secui, neco quod necui, mico verbum
Quod micui, plico quod plicui, frico quod fricui dat :
Sic domo quod domui, tono quod tonui, sono verbum.
Quod sonui, crepo quod crepui, veto quod vetui dat,
Atque cubo cubui : rarò hæc formantur in avi.
Do das ritè dedi, sto stas formare steti vult.

THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Es—————*ui.*

Es in præsenti perfectum format ui dans :
Ut nigreo nigres nigrui : jubeo excipe jussi :
Sorbeo sorbui habet sorpsi quoque, mulceo mulsi :
Luceo vult luxi, sedeo sedi, videóque
Vult vidi : sed prandeo prandi, strideo stridi,
Suadeo suasi, rideo risi, habet ardeo et arsi.
Quatuor his infrà geminatur syllaba prima :
Pendeo namque pependi, mordeo vultque momordi,
Spondeo habere sponpondi, tondeo vultque totondi.
L vel r ante geo si stet, geo vertitur in si :
Urgeo ut ursi ; mulgeo mulsi dat quoque mulxi,
Frigeo frixi, lugeo luxi, habet augeo et auxi.
Dat fleo fles flevi, leo les levi, indéque natum
Deleo delevi ; pleo ples plevi, neo nevi.
A maneo mansi formatur ; torqueo torsi,
Hæreo vult hæsi. Veo fit vi : ut ferveo fervi ;
Niveo, et indè satum poscit conniveo, nivi
Et nixi ; cieo civi, vieóque vievi.

The

THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

TERTIA præteritum formabit ut hæc manifestum.

Bo *fit* bi: *ut* lambo lambi: scribo *excipe* scripsi,
Et nubo nupsi; *antiquum* cumbo cubui *dat*.

Co *fit* ci: *ut* vinco vici: *vult* parco peperci,
Et parsi; dico dixi, duco *quoque* duxi.

Do *fit* di: *ut* mando mandi; *sed* scindo scidi *dat*,
Findo fidi, fundo fudi, tundo tutudique,

Pendo pependi, tendo tetendi, *junge* cadóque
Quod cecidi *format*; *pro verbero* cædo cecidi;

Cedo *pro discedere, sive locum dare, cessi*:

Vado, rado, lædo, ludo, divido, trudo,

Claudo, plaudo, rodo, *ex do* *semper faciunt* si.

Go *fit* xi: *ut* jungo junxi: *sed r ante* go *vult* si,
Ut spargo sparsi; lego legi, *et ago* *facit* egi:

Dat tango tetigi, pungo punxi pupugique;

Dat frango fregi, pepigi *vult* pago *paciscor*,

Pango *etiam* pegi, *sed* panxi *maluit* usus.

Ho *fit* xi: traho *ceu* traxi *docet*, *et* veho vexi.

Lo *fit* ui: colo *ceu* colui: psallo *excipe* cum p,
Et sallo *sine* p, *nam* li *tibi* *format* *utrumque*;

Dat vello velli vulsi *quoque*, fallo fefelli,

Cello *pro* frango ceculi, pello pepulique.

Mo *fit* ui: vomo *ceu* vomui: *sed* emo *facit* emi;

Como *petit* compsi, promo prompsi: *adjice* demo

Quod *format* dempsi, sumo sumpsi: premo pressi.

No *fit* vi: sino *ceu* sivi: temno *excipe* tempsti;

Dat sterno stravi, sperno spreui, lino leui,

Interdum lini *et* livi, cerno *quoque* creui:

Gigno, pono, cano; genui, posui, cecini, *dant*.

Po *fit* psi: *ut* scalpo scalpsi: rumpo *excipe* rupi,

Et strepo *quod* *format* strepui, crepo *quod* crepui *dat*.

Quo *fit* qui: *ut* linquo liqui: coquo demito coxi.

Ro *fit* vi: sero *ceu* *pro* planto *et* semino sevi,

Quod serui melius *semper* dabit *ordino* signans.

Vult verro verri *et* versi, uro ussi, gero gessi,

Quæro quæsi, tero trivi, curro cucurri.

So, *veluti* *probat* arcesso, incesso, *atque* lacesso,

Formabit sivi: *sed* tolle capesso capessi

Quódque

*Quódque capessivi facit, atque facesso facessi,
Et viso visi: sed pinso pinsui habebit.*

*Sco fit vi: ut pasco pavi: vult posco poposci,
Vult didici disco, quexi formare quinisco.*

*To fit ti: ut verto verti: sed sisto notetur
Pro facio stare activum, nam jure stiti dat;
Dat mitto misi, peto vult formare petivi;
Sterto stertui habet, meto messui: Ab ecto fit exi;
Ut flecto flexi: necto dat nexui habétque
Nexi; etiam pecto dat pexui, habet quoque pexi.*

Vo fit vi: ut volvo volvi: vivo excipe vixi.

Xo fit ui: ut monstrat texo, quod texui habebit.

*Fít cio ci: ut facio feci, jacio quoque jeci:
Antiquum lacio lexi, specio quoque spexi.*

Fít dio di: ut fodio fodi: Gio, ceu fugio, gi.

*Fít pio pi: ut capio cepi: cupio excipe pivi:
Et rapio rapui, sapio sapui atque sapivi.*

*Fít rio ri: ut pario peperí. Tio, ssi, geminans s,
Ut quatio quassi, quod vix reperitur in usu.*

*Denique uo fit ui; ut, statuo statui: pluo pluvi
Format, sive plui; struo sed struxi, fluo fluxi.*

THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Is———ivi.

Quarta dat is ivi: ut monstrat scio scis tibi scivi.

Excipias venio dans veni, et veneo venii:

Raucio rausi, farcio farsí, sarsio sarsi,

Sepio sepsi, sentio sensi, fulcio fulsi,

Haurio item hausi, sancio sanxi, vincio vinxi;

Pro salto salio saluť, et amicio amícuí dat.

II. Of the Preterperfect Tense of compound Verbs.

PRÆTERITUM dat idem simplex et compositivum:

Ut docui edocui monstrat: sed syllaba, semper

Quam simplex geminat, compósto non geminatur:

Præterquam tribus his, præcurro, excurro, repungo;

Atque à do, disco, sto, posco, ritè creatis.

A plico compositum cum sub vel nomine, ut ista,

Supplico, multiplico, gaudent formare plicavi;

Applico, complico, replico, et explico, ui quoque formant.

Quamvis

*Quamvis vult oleo simplex olui, tamen indè
Quodvis compositum meliùs formabit olevi ;
Simplicis at formam redolet sequitur, subolétque.*

*Composita à pungo formabunt omnia punxi ;
Vult unum pupugi, interdùmque repungo, repunxi.*

*Natum à do, quando est inflexio tertia, ut, addo,
Credo, edo, dedo, reddo, perdo, abdo, vel obdo,
Condo, indo, trado, prodo, vendo, didi : at unum
Abscondo, abscondi. Natum à sto stas, stiti habebit.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *E*.

*VERBA hæc simplicia præsentis præteritique,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in e mutant :
Damno, lacto, sacro, fallo, arceo, tracto, fatiscor,
Cando vetus, capto, jacto, patior, gradióque,
Partio, carpo, patro, scando, spargo ; parióque,
Cujus nata per i duo, comperit et reperit, dant ;
Cætera sed per ui, velut hæc, aperire, operire.*

*A pasco pavi tantùm compósta notentur
Hæc duo, compesco, dispesco, pescui habere.
Cætera, ut epasco, servabunt simplicis usum.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel into *I*.

*HÆC habeo, lateo, salio, statuo, cado, lædo,
Et tango, atque cano, sic quæro, cædo, cecīdi,
Sic egeo, teneo, taceo, sapio, rapióque,
Si componantur, vocalem primam in i mutant :
Ut rapio rapui, eripio eripui : A cano natum
Præteritum per ui, ceu concino concinui, dat.*

*A placeo sic displiceo, sed simplicis usum
Hæc duo, complaceo cum perplaceo, bene servant.*

*Composita à verbis calco, salto, a per u mutant :
Id tibi demonstrant conculco, inculco, resulto.*

*Composita à claudio, quatio, lavo, rejiciunt a :
Id docet à claudio, occludo, excludo ; à quatióque,
Percutio, excutio ; à lavo, proluo, diluo, nata.*

Compound Verbs which change the first Vowel of the
Present Tense into *I*, but not the Preterperfect Tense.

HÆC si componas, ago, emo, sedeo, rego, frango,

Et

*Et capio, jacio, lacio, specio, premo, pango,
 Vocalem primam præsents in i sibi mutant,
 Præteriti nunquam : ceu, frango, refringo refregi :
 A capio, incipio incepti : sed pauca notentur :
 Namque suum simplex perago sequitur, satagóque ;
 Atque ab ago, dego dat degi, cogo, coëgi ;
 A rego, sic pergo perrexi : vult quoque surgo
 Surrexi : mediâ præsents syllabâ ademptâ.*

*Composita à pango, retinent a quatuor ista :
 Depango, oppango, circumpango, atque repango.*

*Nil variat facio, nisi præposito præeunte,
 Id docet olfacio, cum calfacio, inficióque.*

*A lego nata, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte,
 Præsents servant vocalem ; in i cætera mutant ;
 De quibus hæc, intelligo, diligo, negligo, tantùm
 Præteritum lexi faciunt ; reliqua omnia legi.*

III. Of the Supines of simple Verbs.

*NUNC ex præterito discas formare supinum.
 Bi sibi tum sumit : sic namque bibi bibitum fit.*

*Ci fit ctum : ut vici victum testatur, et ici
 Dans ictum, feci factum, jeci quoque jactum.*

*Di fit sum : ut vidi visum : quædam geminant s :
 Ut pandi passum, sedi sessum, adde scidi quod
 Dat scissum, atque fidi fissum, fodi quoque fossum.*

*Hic etiam advertas, quòd syllaba prima supinis,
 Quam vult præteritum geminari, non geminatur :
 Idque totondi dans tonsum docet, atque cecidi
 Quod cæsum, et cecidi quod dat casum, atque tetendi
 Quod tensum et tentum, tutudi tunsum, atque dedi quod
 Jure datum poscit, morsum vult atque momordi.*

*Gi fit ctum : ut, legi lectum, pegi pepigique
 Dant pactum, fregi fractum, tetigi quoque tactum,
 Egi actum, pupugi punctum : fugi fugitum dat.*

*Li fit sum : ut salli, stans pro sale condio, salsum :
 Dat pepuli pulsum, ceculi culsum, atque fefelli
 Falsum ; dat velli vulsum : tuli habet quoque latum.*

*Mi, ni, pi, qui, tum formant, velut hic manifestum :
 Emi emptum, veni ventum, cecini à cano cantum ;*

A capio cepi captum ; coepi *quoque* coeptum :

A rumpo rupi ruptum : liqui *quoque* lictum.

Ri *fit* sum : *ut*, verri versum ; peperī *excipe* partum.

Si *fit* sum : *ut*, visi visum ; *tamen* s *geminato*
Misi *formabit* missum ; fulsi *excipe* fultum,

Hausi haustum, sarsi sartum, farsi *quoque* fartum,

Ussi ustum, gessi gestum ; torsi *duo* tortum

Et torsum : indulsi indultum, *indulsúmque requirit*.

Psi *fit* ptum : *ut* scripsi scriptum ; sculpsi *quoque*
sculptum.

Ti *fit* tum : à sto *namque* steti, à sistóque stiti, *dant*
Ambo ritè statum : verti *tamen excipe* versum.

Vi *fit* tum : *ut* flavi flatum ; pavi *excipe* pastum :

Dat lavi lotum, *interdum* lautum *atque* lavatum,

Potavi potum, *interdum facit et* potatum,

Sed favi fautum, cavi cautum : *A* sero sevi

Formes ritè satum, livi *liníque* litum *dant*,

Solvi à solvo solutum, volvi à volvo volutum :

Vult singultivi singultum, veneo venis

Venivi venum, sepelivi *ritè* sepultum.

Quod dat ui *dat* itum : *ut* domui donitum ; *excipe*
quodvis

Verbum in uo, *quia semper* ui *formabit in* utum ;

Exui *ut* exutum : à ruo *deme* rui ruitum *dans* :

Vult secui sectum, necui nectum, fricuíque

Frictum, miscui *item* mistum, *et* amicui *dat* amictum ;

Torruí *habet* tostum, docui doctum, tenuíque

Tentum, consului consultum, alui altum alitúmque ;

Sic salui saltum, colui ocului *quoque* cultum ;

Pinsui *habet* pistum, rapui raptum, seruíque

A sero vult sertum ; *sic* texui *habet quoque* textum.

Hæc sed ui *mutant in* sum ; *nam* censeo censum,

Cellui *habet* celsum, meto messui *habet quoque* messum ;

Nexui *item* nexum, *sic* pexui *habet quoque* pexum.

Xi *fit* ctum : *ut* vinxi vinctum : *quinque abjiciunt* n ;

Ut finxi fictum, minxi mictum, *adjice* pinxi

Dans pictum, strinxi strictum, rinxi *quoque* rictum.

Xum flexi, plexi, fixi *dant* ; *et* fluo fluxum.

IV. Of the Supines of compound Verbs.

COMPOSITUM Mut simplex formatur quodque supinum,
Quamvis non eadem stet syllaba semper utrique.

*Composita à tunsum, demptá n, tusum : à ruitum fit,
 I mediá demptá, rutum ; et à saltum quoque sultum ;
 A sero, quando satum format, compósta situm dant.*

*Hæc captum, factum, jactum, raptum, a per e mutant ;
 Et cantum, partum, sparsum, carptum, quoque fartum.*

*Verbum edo compositum non estum, sed facit esum ;
 Unum duntaxat comedo formabit utrumque.*

*A nosco tantum duo cognitum et agnitum habentur,
 Cætera dant notum : nullo est jam noscitur in usu.*

V. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs in *OR*.

*VERBA in or, admittunt ex posteriore supino
 Præteritum, verso u per us, et sum consociato
 Vel fui : ut à lectu, lectus sum vel fui. At horum
 Nunc est deponens, nunc est commune notandum.*

*Nam labor lapsus ; patior dat passus, et ejus
 Nata ; ut, compatior compassus, perpetiórque*

*Formans perpassus ; fateor dat fassus, et inde
 Nata ; ut, confiteor confessus, diffiteórque*

*Formans diffessus, gradior dat gressus, et inde
 Nata ; ut, digredior digressus : junge fatiscor*

Fessus sum, mensus sum metior, utor et usus.

Pro texo orditus, pro incepto dat ordior orsus,

Nitor nisus vel nixus sum, ulciscor et ultus ;

Irascor simul iratus, reor atque ratus sum,

Obliviscor vult oblitus sum, fruor optat

Fructus vel fruitus : misereri junge misertus.

Vult tuor et tueor non tutus, sed tuitus sum ;

A loquor adde locutus, et à sequor adde secutus.

Exuperior facit expertus ; formare paciscor

Gaudet pactus sum, nanciscor nactus, apiscor

Quod vetus est verbum aptus sum, unde adipiscor adeptus.

Junge queror questus, proficiscor junge profectus,

Expergiscor sum experrectus ; et hæc quoque commi-

niscor commentus, nascor natus, moriórque

Mortuus, atque orior quod præteritum facit ortus.

VI. Of Verbs which make the Preterperfect Tense both in the active and passive Voice.

PRÆTERITUM activæ et passivæ vocis habent hæc :

Cœno cœnavi et cœnatus sum tibi format,

Juro juravi et juratus, potóque potavi

Et potus, titubo titubavi vel titubatus.

Prandeo prandi et pransus sum, placeo placui dat

Et placitus, suesco suevi vult atque suetus.

Nubo nupsi nuptáque sum, mereor meritus sum

Vel merui : adde libet libuit libitum, et licet adde

Quod licuit licitum, tædet quod tæduit et dat

Pertæsum ; adde pudet faciens puduit pudítumque ;

Atque piget, tibi quod format piguit pigítumque.

VII. Of the Preterperfect Tense of Verbs Neuter-passive.

NEUTRO-passivum sic præteritum tibi format ;

Gaudeo gavisus sum, fido fisus, et audeo

Ausus sum, fio factus, soleo solitus sum.

Verbs which want the Preterperfect Tense.

PRÆTERITUM fugiunt, vergo, ambigo, glisco, fatisco,

Polleo, nideo : ad hæc inceptiva ; ut, puerasco ;

Et passiva, quibus caruere activa supinis ;

Ut metuor, timeor : meditativa omnia, præter

Parturio, esurio, quæ præteritum duo servant.

Verbs which seldom admit a Supine.

HÆC rarò aut nunquam retinebunt verba supinum.

Lambo, mico micui, rudo, scabo, parco peperci,

Dispesco, posco, disco, compesco, quinisco,

Dego, ango, sugo, lingo, ningo, satagóque,

Psallo, volo, nolo, malo, tremo, strideo, strido,

Flaveo, liveo, avet, paveo, conniveo, fervet.

A nuo compositum, ut renuo : à cado, ut accido, præter

Occido quod facit occasum, recidóque recasum :

Respuo, linquo, luo, motuo, cluo, frigeo, calveo,

Et sterto, timeo : sic luceo, et arceo, cujus

Composita erciturum habent ; sic à gruo, ut, ingruo, nata ;

Et quæcunque in ui formantur neutra secundæ ;

Excipias oleo, doleo, placeo, taceóque,

Pareo, item careo, noceo, jaceo, lateóque,

Et valeo, caleo ; gaudent hæc namque supino.

SYNTAXIS ;

SYNTAXIS ;

OR THE

CONSTRUCTION OF GRAMMAR.

CONCORDANTIA Prima.

Nominativus et Verbum.

*The First Concord: The Nominative Case and the Verb.**

VERBUM personale concordat cum nominativo numero et personâ: ut,

Sera nunquam^b est ad bonos mores^a via. Sen.

Nominativus pronominum rarò exprimitur, nisi distinctionis, aut emphasis gratiâ: ut,

^aVos^b damnâtis: quasi dicat, præterea nemo.

^aTu^b es patronus, ^atu parens, si^b deseris^a tu, perimus: quasi dicat, præcipuè, et præ aliis, Tu patronus es, &c.

^aFertur atrocia flagitia designâsse.

* ILLUSTRATIONS and EXCEPTIONS under some of the more difficult Rules.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE AND THE VERB.

1. Every sentence ~~must~~ have a verb; but *sum* is often understood: as *quot homines, tot sententiæ.* Ter.

2. The infinitive is sometimes varied by *quid* and an indicative. But to denote the *final cause*, i. e. any *purpose* or *design*, *ut* and the subjunctive mood must be constantly used. The accusatives *me, te, se*, are sometimes understood: as, *sed reddere posse negabat.* Vir.

3. The infinitive, when it has an accusative case before it, has commonly the signs of the indicative, *that* being expressed or understood before the noun: as, Pres. *te redire gaudeo*, I am glad that you are returning: Imp. *te redire gaudeo*, I am glad that you were returning. Perf. *te rediisse gaudeo*, I am glad that you have returned. Pluperf. *te rediisse gaudeo*, I am glad that you had returned. Fut. *te reditum esse gaudeo*, I am glad that you will return, or, that you would or should return.

Aliquando

Aliquando oratio est verbo nominativus : ut,

^a*Ingenuas didicisse fideliter artes*

^b*Emollit mores, nec ^bsinit esse feros.* Ovid.

Aliquando adverbium cum genitivo : ut,

^a*Partim virorum ^bcecciderunt in bello.*

Exceptions.

VERBA infinitivi modi frequenter pro nominativo accusativum ante se statuunt, conjunctione *quòd*, vel *ut*, omissa : ut,

^a*Te ^brediisse incolumem gaudeo.*

II. Verbum inter duos nominativos diversorum numerorum positum, cum alterutro concordare potest : ut,

Amantium ^airæ amoris ^aintegratio ^best. Ter.

^a*Pectus quoque ^arobora ^bfunt.* Ovid.

III. Nomen multitudinis singulare quandoque verbo plurali jungitur : ut,

^a*Pars ^babière.* ^a*Uterque ^bluduntur dolis.*

Impersonalia nominativum non habent præcedentem : ut,

^a*Tædet me vitæ.* ^a*Pertæsum est conjugii.*

CONCORDANTIA Secunda.

Substantivum et Adjectivum, &c.

The Second Concord : The Substantive and the Adjective, &c.

ADJECTIVA, participia, et pronomina, cum substantivo, genere, numero, et casu, concordant : ut,

^b*Rara ^aavis in terris, ^bnigróque simillima ^acygno.* Juv.

Aliquando oratio supplet locum substantivi, adjectivo in neutro genere posito : ut,

^b*Audito ^aregem Doroberniam proficisci.*

CONCOR-

CONCORDANTIA Tertia.

Relativum et Antecedens.

*The Third Concord: The Relative and the Antecedent.**

RELATIVUM cum antecedente concordat, genere, numero, et personâ: ut,

^a*Vir bonus est quis?*

^b*Qui consulta patrum, ^bqui leges jurâque servat.* Hor.

Aliquando oratio ponitur pro antecedente: ut,

^a*In tempore ad eam veni, ^bquod rerum omnium est primum.* Ter.

Relativum inter duo substantiva diversorum generum et numerorum collocatum, interdum cum posteriore concordat: ut,

Homines tuentur illum ^aglobum ^bquæ ^aterra dicitur.
Cic.

* THE RELATIVE AND THE ANTECEDENT.

1. The antecedent is that substantive which is understood after the relative; and if the ellipsis be carefully filled up, there can be no difficulty in this concord: as, *Deus, qui (deus) nos creavit, cujus (dei) sumus, cui (deo) parent omnia, quem (deum) non cernimus oculis, à quo (deo) pendemus tamen, est æternus.* That God, which (God) created us, the creatures of which (God) we are, which (God) all things obey, &c. is eternal.

2. The antecedent is actually sometimes expressed in the relative clause: as, *erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent.* Cæs.

3. Sometimes the antecedent is elegantly expressed in the relative clause: as *populo ut placerent, quas fecisset fabulas.* Ter. *Urbem quam statuo, vestra est.* Vir. *Fabulæ* and *urbs* are understood.

4. The relative clause is often put before the antecedent clause in Latin, though it cannot in English: as, *Qui pauperes sunt, iis antiquior officio est pecunia.* Cic.

OBSERVATION common to the three Concords.

The words *homo*, a man, and *negotium*, a thing, are frequently understood in the three concords: as, *ita aiunt.* Ter. *Rari quippe boni.* Juv. *Quod honestum, id utile est.* Cic. *Non esse cupidum, pecunia est; non esse emâcem, vectigal.* Cic. *Felicitèr sapit, qui alieno periculo sapit.* Plaut.
Aliquando

Aliquando relativum concordat cum primitivo, quod in possessivo subauditur; ut,

Omnes omnia

Bona dicere, et laudare fortunas ^ameas,

^bQui gnatum haberem tali ingenio præditum. Ter.

Si nominativus relativo et verbo interponatur, relativum regitur à verbo, aut ab aliâ dictione, quæ cum verbo in oratione locatur: ut,

Gratia ab officio, ^bquod mora ^atardat, abest. Ovid.

^bCujus ^anumen adoro.

NOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

I. SUBSTANTIVA.

*The Construction of Nouns Substantive.**

QUUM duo substantiva diversæ significationis concurrunt, posterius in genitivo ponitur: ut,

Crescit ^aamor ^bnummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit. Juv.

Hic genitivus aliquando in dativum vertitur: ut,

^bUrbi ^apater est, ^burbique ^amaritus. Luc.

Adjectivum in neutro genere sine substantivo positum, aliquando genitivum postulat: ut,

^aPaululum ^bpecuniæ.

* CONSTRUCTION OF Nouns Substantive.

1. Of, the usual sign of the genitive, is sometimes a preposition: when put for *about* or *concerning*, it is rendered by *de*; for *from*, by *à*, *ab*, or *de*; for *out of*, by *ex* or *ex*.

2. Nouns of matter have always *of* before them, but require *ex*, or *de* with an ablative; or are rendered by their kindred adjectives; as, *ensis* *ex*, *vel de ferro factus*; or *ferreus ensis*.

3. It is by ellipsis that the following phrases are read: *urbis Patav.* Vir. *flumen Rheni*. Vir. *cui nomen est* being understood.

4. Hence, in some forms, the denominative noun may be either the nominative, genitive, or dative; as *cui nomen Iulio additur*. Vir. It might have been *Iulius*; and both by apposition: or *Iulii*, as the latter of two substantives. The first is the most elegant.

Ponitur

Ponitur interdum genitivus tantum, priore substantivo per ellipsin subaudito : ut,

Ubi ad ^aDianæ veneris, ito ad dextram. Ter.
Subaudi, *templum.*

Duo substantiva rei ejusdem in eodem casu ponuntur : ut,

Effodiuntur ^aopes, ^airritamenta malorum.

LAUS, vituperium, vel qualitas rei, ponitur in ablativo, etiam genitivo : ut,

Ingenui ^bvultus ^apuer, ingenuique ^bpudoris. Juv.

^aVir nulli ^bfide.

OPUS et usus ablativum exigunt : ut,

^bAuctoritate tuâ nobis ^aopus est. Cic.

Pecuniam ^bquid nihil sibi esset ^ausus, ab iis non accepit. Gell.

OPUS autem adjectivè pro *necessarius* quandoque poni videtur : ut,

Dux ^bnobis et auctor ^aopus est. Cic.

II. ADJECTIVA.

The Construction of Nouns Adjective.

I. Genitivus post Adjectivum.

*The Genitive Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quæ desiderium, notitiam, memoriam, timorem significant, atque iis contraria, genitivum exigunt : ut,

Est natura hominum ^bnovitatis ^aavida. Plin.

Mens ^bfuturi ^apræscia.

^aMemor

* CONSTRUCTION of Adjectives.

GENITIVE CASE.

1. Sometimes the adjective of praise and dispraise agrees with the subject of the sentence, and the noun of praise is put in the ablative; as *vir gravitate et prudentiâ excellens.* Cic.

2. Sometimes a plural neuter adjective is used singly: *spatia, ne...*

^a*Memor esto brevis* ^b*ævi*. ^a*Immemor* ^b*beneficii*.

^a*Imperitus* ^b*rerum*. ^a*Rudis* ^b*belli*.

^a*Timidus* ^b*Deorum*. Ovid. ^a*Impavidus* ^b*sui*. Claud.
Cum plurimis aliis quæ affectionem animi denotant.

ADJECTIVA verbalia in *ar* etiam genitivum exigunt :
ut,

^a*Audax* ^b*ingenii*.—*Tempus* ^a*edax* ^b*rerum*.

NOMINA partitiva, numeralia, comparativa et superlativa ; et quædam adjectiva partitivè posita, genitivum, à quo et genus mutuatur, exigunt : ut,

^a*Utrum* ^b*horum* *mavis accipe*.

^a*Primus* ^b*regum Romanorum fuit Romulus*.

^b*Manuum* ^a*fortior est dextra*.

^b*Digitorum* *medius est* ^a*longissimus*.

Sequitur te, ^a*sancte* ^b*deorum*.

Usurpantur autem et cum his præpositionibus, à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante : ut,

^a*Tertius* ^b*ab Æned*.

^a*Solus* ^b*de superis*.

Deus ^b*è vobis* ^a*alter es*. Ovid.

^a*Primus* ^b*inter omnes*.

^a*Primus* ^b*ante omnes*.

SECUNDUS aliquando dativum exigit : ut,
Haud ^b*ulli veterum virtute* ^a*secundus*. Virg.

INTERROGATIVUM, et ejus redditivum, ejusdem castis et temporis erunt, nisi voces variæ constructionis adhibeantur : ut,

^a*Quarum rerum nulla est satietas?* ^b*Divitiarum*.

^a*Furti-ne accusas, an* ^a*homicidii?* ^b*Utroque*.

something similar being understood : as, *opaca viarum*. Vir. *Acuta belli*. Hor.

3. Both singular and plural neuters are used adverbially : as, *dulceridens, suave rubens, torva tuens, acerba sonans*. Hor. Vir.

4. Sometimes the noun of partition and the partitive are put in the same case by apposition : as, *illos centeni quemque sequuntur*. Vir. *Maxima pars morem hunc homines habent*. Plaut.

Note ; Comparatives speak only of two ; superlatives of more.

II. Da-

II. Dativus post Adjectivum.

*The Dative Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quibus commodum, incommodum, similitudo, dissimilitudo, voluptas, submissio, aut relatio ad aliquid significatur, dativum postulant: ut,

Si facis ut ^bpatricæ sit ^aidoneus, ^autilis ^bagris. Juv.

Turba ^agravis ^bpaci, placidæque ^ainimica ^bquieti.

Mart.

^bPatri ^asimilis. Cic.

Qui color albus erat, nunc est ^acontrarius ^balbo. Ovid.

^aJucundus ^bamicis. Martial.

^bOmnibus ^asupplex.

Est ^afinitimus ^boratori poëta.

Huc referuntur nomina ex *con* præpositione composita: ut, *contubernalis, commilito, conservus, cognatus, &c.*

Quædam ex his quæ similitudinem significant, etiam genitivo junguntur: ut,

Quem metuis, ^apar ^bhujus erat. Lucan.

^bDomini ^asimilis es. Ter.

COMMUNIS, *alienus, immunis*, genitivo, dativo, et ablativo cum præpositione, junguntur: ut,

^aCommune ^banimantium omnium est. Cic.

Mors ^bomnibus est ^acommunis. Ibid.

Hoc ^bmihi tecum ^acommune est.

Non ^aaliena ^bconsilii. Sallust.

* DATIVE CASE.

1. *Idem* among the poets governs a dative: as, *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti.* Hor. In prose it is followed by *qui, ac, atque*: as, *animus erga te idem ac [or qui or atque] fuit.* Ter. *Si personis idem uti aliis non licet.* Ter. i. e. *Personis iisdem uti, quibus alii utuntur.*

2. Adjectives of diversity take an ablative with a preposition: and sometimes a dative: as, *diversus ab illo, or illi.* Lilly.

3. *Alius* takes sometimes an ablative without a preposition. as, *nove putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum.* Hor.

^aAlienus

Alienus ^b*ambitioni*. Sen. Præf.
Non alienus ^b*à Scævolaë studiis*. Cic.
Vobis ^a*immunibus hujus*
Esse ^b*mali dabitur*. Ovid.
Caprificus ^b*omnibus* ^a*immunis est*. Plin.
Immunes ^b*ab illis malis sumus*.

NATUS, *commodus, incommodus, utilis, inutilis, vehemens, aptus*, cum multis aliis, interdum etiam accusativo cum præpositione junguntur: ut,

Natus ^b*ad gloriam*. Cic.
Utilis ^b*ad eam rem*.

VERBALIA in *bilis* accepta passivè, et participialia in *dus*, dativum postulant: ut,

Nulli ^a*penetrabilis* ^b*astro*
Lucus iners. Stat.
O ^b*mihi post nullos Juli* ^a*memorande sodales*. Mart.

III. Accusativus post Adjectivum.

The Accusative Case after the Adjective.

MAGNITUDINIS mensura subjicitur adjectivis in accusativo, ablativo, et genitivo: ut,

Turris ^a*centum* ^b*pedes* ^a*alta*.
Fons ^a*latus* ^b*pedibus tribus*, ^a*altus* ^b*triginta*.
Area ^a*lata* ^b*pedum dendm*.

Accusativus aliquando subjicitur adjectivis, et participiis ubi præpositio *secundùm* videtur subintelligi: ut,
^b*Os* ^b*humerosque Deo* ^a*similis*. ^b*Vultum* ^a*demissus*.

IV. Ablativus post Adjectivum.

*The Ablative Case after the Adjective.**

ADJECTIVA, quæ ad copiam, egestatémve, pertinent,

* ABLATIVE CASE.

1. *Dignus* and *indignus* have sometimes an infinitive: as, *erat tum dignus amari*. Vir. But they are more usually followed by *qui* or *ut*: as, *dignus qui*, or *ut amaretur*.

2. *Quàm*

nent, interdum ablativum, interdum genitivum exigunt: ut,

^a*Dives* ^b*equum*, ^a*dives pictai* ^b*vestis*, et ^b*auri*. Virg.
Amor, et ^b*melle*, et ^b*felle*, est ^a*fecundissimus*. Plaut.
^a*Expers* ^b*fraudis*. ^b*Gratid* ^a*beatus*.

ADJECTIVA et substantiva regunt ablativum significantem causam et formam, vel modum rei: ut,

^a*Pallidus* ^b*ird*.

^b*Nomine* ^a*grammaticus*, ^b*re* ^a*barbarus*.

^a*Trojanus* ^b*origine* *Cæsar*. Virg.

DIGNUS, indignus, præditus, captus, contentus, extorris, fretus, liber; cum adjectivis pretium significantivus, ablativum exigunt: ut,

^a*Dignus es* ^b*odio*. Ter.

Qui gnatum haberem tali ^b*ingenio* ^a*præditum*. Ibid.

^b*Oculis* ^a*capti fodere cubilia talpæ*. Virg.

^b*Sorte tuâ* ^a*contentus abi*.

^b*Terrore* ^a*liber animus*. Liv. ^b*Gemmis* ^a*venale nec*
^b*bauro*.

Horum nonnulla interdum genitivum admittunt: ut,
Magnorum ^a*indignus* ^b*avorum*. Virg.

Carmina ^a*digna* ^b*deæ*. ^a*Extorris* ^b*regni*. Stat.

COMPARATIVA, cùm exponantur per quàm, ablativum admittunt: ut,

^a*Vilius argentum est* ^b*bauro*, ^b*virtutibus aurum*: id est;
^b*quàm aurum*, ^b*quàm virtutes*. Hor.

2. Quàm is elegantly put between two comparatives: as, *triumphus clarior quàm gratior*. Liv.

3. Where quàm is expressed, the noun following takes the case of the preceding noun: as, *ego callidiorem hominem vidi neminem quàm Phormionem*. Ter.

4. The ablatives solito or nimio are often understood after comparatives, and then the comparatives are used in a positive sense, but with a peculiar emphasis: as, *Non ego, cùm scribo, si fortè quid aptius exit, laudari metuum*. Pers. *Longius et volvens fatorum arcana movebo*. Vir.

5. The English of tanto and quàm is generally left out, the word the before the comparative supplying their place: as, *the greater we are, the humbler we should be; quanto (or quo) majores, tanto (or eo) submissius nos geramus*. Cic.

TANTO,

TANTO, quanto, hoc, ed, et quò, cum quibusdam aliis, quæ mensuram excessûs significant : item, ætate et natu, comparativis et superlativis sæpe junguntur : ut,

^bTanto ^apessimus omnium poëta,

^bQuanto tu ^aoptimus omnium patronus. Catull.

^bQuò ^aplus habent, ^bed ^aplus cupiunt.

^aMajor et ^amaximus ^bætate.

^aMajor et ^amaximus ^bnatu.

PRONOMINUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Pronouns.**

MEI, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, genitivi primitivorum, ponuntur cùm persona significatur : ut,

Languet ^adesiderio ^btui.

Pársque ^btui lateat corpore clausa meo. Ovid.

Imago ^bnostri.

MEUS, tuus, suus, noster, vester, ponuntur, cùm actio vel possessio rei significatur : ut,

Favet ^adesiderio ^btuo.

Imago ^bnostra ; id est, quam nos possidemus.

* CONSTRUCTION of Pronouns

1. *Sui* and *meus* are reciprocals when the discourse is continued, concerning the same person or thing which the sentence began with; but when another person is introduced into the sentence, the demonstratives, *hic*, *is*, *ille*, *ipse*, are absolutely required: as Cato confesses that *he* has erred, i. e. that he, Cato, or he himself, has erred; *Cato se peccasse fatetur*. Cato thinks ill of Cæsar, and says that *he* aims at a revolution, i. e. that he (Cæsar, the other person) aims at a revolution, *de Cæsare malè sentit Cato; cum studere novis rebus arbitratur*. Cato killed himself with *his* sword, i. e. with the sword of the same Cato, or his own sword: *suo se gladio confecit Cato*. He killed himself with *his* sword, i. e. with the sword of any other person, mentioned before; *illius gladio se confecit*. See Clarke's Note, *Cæs. Bell. Gall. l. 8. c. 41*.

2. But *ipse* is used sometimes for *sui* by an ellipsis.

3. *Hic* sometimes, however, signifies the former, and *ille* the latter: as, *Sic deus et virgo est: hic spe celer, illa timore*. Ov.

4. *Ille* joined to a noun, generally expresses eminence; *iste*, contempt: as, *Alexander ille magnus. Istum æmulum, quod poteris, ab eâ pellito*. Ter.

5. *Ipse* and *idem* are joined to any person.

Hæc

Hæc possessiva *meus, tuus, suus, noster, et vester*, hos genitivos post se recipiunt; *ipsius, solius, unius, duorum, trium, &c. omnium, plurium, paucorum, cujusque*, et genitivos participiorum, qui ad primitivum subauditum referuntur: ut,

Dixi ^a*med* ^b*unius operâ rempublicam esse salvam.* Cic.

^a*Meum* ^b*solius peccatum corrigi non potest.* Ibid.

Cum ^a*mea* nemo

Scripta legat vulgè recitare ^b*timentis.* Hor.

De ^a*tuo* ^b*ipsius studio conjecturam ceperis.* Cic.

In ^a*sud* ^b*cujusque laude præstantior.*

^a*Nostrâ* ^b*omnium memoriâ.*

^a*Vestris* ^b*paucorum respondet laudibus.* Cic.

SUI et *suius* reciproca sunt; *hoc est*, semper reflectuntur ad id quod præcipuum in sententiâ præceasit: ut,

Petrus nimium ^a*admiratur* ^b*se.* ^a*Parcit erroribus* ^b*suis.*

Magnoperè ^a*Petrus rogat, ne* ^b*se deseras.*

HÆC demonstrativa, *hic, iste, ille*, sic distinguuntur: *hic* mihi proximum demonstrat; *iste* eum, qui apud te est; *ille* eum, qui ab utroque remotus est.

Hic et ille, cum ad duo anteposita referuntur, *hic* primumque ad posterius, *ille* ad prius refertur: ut,

Quocunque aspicias, nihil est, nisi ^a*pontus* et ^b*æer,*
Nubibus ^b*hic tumidus, fluctibus* ^a*ille minax.* Ovid.

VERBORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Verbs.

I. Nominativus post Verbum.

*The Nominative Case after the Verb.**

VERBA substantiva; ut, *sum, forem, fio, existo*:
Verba vocandi passiva; ut, *nominor, appellor, diceor, vocor*,

* NOMINATIVE CASE

Sometimes *sum* seems to govern different cases, upon account of a word understood: *vobis expedit esse bonas.* Cer. *Vos* is understood before *esse*.
nuncupor;

nuncupor; et iis similia: ut, *videor, habeor, existimor*, utrinque eodem casu habent: ut,

^a*Deus* ^b*est summum* ^a*bonum*.

^a*Perpusilli* ^b*vocantur* ^a*nani*.

^a*Fides religionis nostræ* ^a*fundamentum* ^b*habetur*.

Natura ^a*beatis*

^a*Omnibus* ^b*esse dedit*.

ITEM omnia ferè verba post se adjectivum admittunt, quod cum nominativo verbi casu, genere, et numero concordat: ut,

^a*Pii* ^b*orant* ^a*taciti*.

Malus ^a*pastor* ^b*dormit* ^a*supinus*.

II. Genitivus post Verbum.

*The Genitive Case after the Verb.**

SUM genitivum postulat, quoties significat possessionem, officium, signum, aut id quod ad rem quampiam pertinet: ut,

Pecus ^a*est* ^b*Melibæi*.

^b*Adolescentis* ^a*est maiores natu revereri*. Cic.

Excipiuntur hi nominativi, *meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, humanum, belluinum*, et similia: ut,

Non ^a*est* ^b*meum contra auctoritatem senatus dicere*. Cic.

^b*Humanum* ^a*est irasci*.

VERBA accusandi, damnandi, monendi, absolvendi, et similia, genitivum postulant, qui crimen significat: ut,

* GENITIVE CASE.

1. Verba of accusing have sometimes two accusatives, especially *moneo*: as, *si id me accusas*. Plaut. *Se eos hoc moneo*. Cic.

2. *Memini*, to make mention, governs a genitive or ablative with *de*: as, *hujus rei vel de hac re memini*.

3. *Veni mihi in mentem* is elegantly used for *memini*, to remember, with this difference of construction: as, *venit mihi in mentem hæc res, hujus rei, vel de hac re*.

4. *Potior, fungor, utor*, and many others, according to the old way of writing, govern an accusative.

Qui

Qui alterum accusat probri, eum ipsum se intueri oportet. Plaut.

Sceleris condemnat generum suum. Cic.

Admoneto illum pristinae fortunae.

Furti absolutus est.

Vertitur hic genitivus aliquando in ablativum, vel cum praepositione, vel sine praepositione: ut,

Putavi eam de re te esse admonendum. Cic.

Si in me iniquus es iudex, condemnabo eodem ego te crimine. Ibid.

UTERQUE, nullus, alter, neuter, alius, ambo, et superlativus gradus, non nisi in ablativo id genus verbis junguntur: ut,

Accusas furti, an stupri? Utroque, vel de utroque:

ambobus, vel de ambobus: neutro, vel de neutro.

De plurimis simul accusaris.

SATAGO, misereor, et miseresco, genitivum postulant: ut,

Is rerum suarum satagit. Ter.

Oro, miserere laborum

Tanctorum, miserere animae non digna ferentis. Virg.

Et generis miserescere tui. Stat.

REMINISCOR, obliviscor, memini, recordor, genitivum, aut accusativum, admittunt: ut,

Datae fidei reminiscitur.

Proprium est stultitiae aliorum vitia cernere, oblivisci suorum. Cic.

Faciam ut hujus loci semper memineris. Ter.

Haec olim meminisse juvabit. Virg.

Hujus meriti in me recordor. Cic.

Si rite audita recordor.

POTIOR, aut genitivo, aut ablativo, jungitur: ut,

Romani signorum et armorum potiti sunt. Sallust.

Egressi optatae potiuntur Troes aeneae. Virg.

III. Dativus post Verbum.

*The Dative Case after the Verb.**

OMNIA verba regunt dativum ejus rei, cui aliquid acquiritur, aut adimitur : ut,

^b*Mihi istic nec ^aseritur, nec ^ametitur.* Plaut.

Quis te ^bmihi casus ^aademit? Ovid.

HUIC regulæ appendent varii generis Verba.

I. Imprimis, verba significantia commodum, aut incommodum, regunt dativum : ut,

Non potes ^bmihi ^acommodare, nec ^aincommodare.

Ex his, *juvo, lædo, delecto*, et alia quædam, accusativum exigunt : ut,

^b*Fessum quies plurimum ^ajuvat.*

II. VERBA comparandi regunt dativum : ut,

Sic ^bparvis ^acomponere magna solebam. Virg.

Interdum verò ablativum cum præpositione *cum* ; interdum accusativum cum præpositionibus *ad* et *inter* : ut,

^a*Comparo Virgilium ^bcum Homero.*

Si ^bad eum ^acomparatur nihil est.

Hæc non sunt ^binter se ^aconferenda.

III. VERBA dandi et reddendi regunt dativum : ut,

Fortuna ^bmultis ^adat nimis, satis ^bnulli. Mart.

Ingratus est, qui gratiam bene ^bmerenti non ^areponit.

IV. VERBA promittendi ac solvendi regunt dativum :

ut,

Quæ ^btibi ^apromitto, ac recipio sanctissimè esse observaturum. Cic.

Æs alienum ^bmihi ^anumeravit. Ib.

* DATIVE CASE.

The participle *volens* is, by a Greek form of much elegance, used in the dative for *voluptati*, in this construction ; as, *neque plebi militia volenti ^aparabatur.* Sall.

V. VERBA

V. VERBA imperandi et nuntiandi regunt dativum :
ut,

^aImperat, aut servit, collecta pecunia ^bcuique. Hor.
Quid de quoque viro, et ^bcui ^adicās, sæpe videto. Ib.

Excipe *rego, gubernō*, quæ accusativum habent : *tempero et moderor*, quæ nunc dativum, nunc accusativum habent : ut,

Luna ^aregit ^bmenses—^borbem Deus ipse ^agubernat.
^aTemperat ipse ^bsibi—Sol ^atemperat ^bomnia luce.
Hic ^amoderatur ^bequos—qui non ^amoderabitur ^biræ.

VI. VERBA fidendi dativum regunt : ut,

Vacuis ^acommittere ^bvenis
Nil nisi lene decet. Hor.

VII. VERBA obsequendi et repugnandi dativum regunt : ut,

Semper ^aobtemperat pius filius ^bpatri.
Ignavis ^bprecibus fortuna ^arepugnat.

VIII. VERBA minandi et irascendi regunt dativum :
ut,

^bUtrique mortem est ^aminitatus. Cic.
^bAdolescenti nihil est, quod ^asuccenseam. Ter.

IX. SUM, cum compositis, præter possum, regit dativum : ut,

Rex pius ^aest ^breipublicæ ornamentum.
^bMihi nec ^aobest, nec ^aprodest.

Dativum fermè regunt verba composita cum his adverbis, *bene, satis, malè*; et cum his præpositionibus, *præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter* : ut,

Dii ^btibi ^abenefaciant. Ter.
Ego meis ^bmajoribus virtute ^apræluxi. Cic.
Intempestivè qui ^boccupato ^aadluserit. Phædr.
^aConducit hoc tuæ ^blaudi. ^aConvixit ^bnobis.
^aSubolet jam ^buxori, quod ego machinor.
Iniquissimam pacem justissimo ^bbello ^aantefero. Cic.
^aPostpono ^bfamæ pecuniam.

Ea quoniam nemini obtrudi potest,

Itur ad me. Ter.

Impendet omnibus periculum.

Non solùm interfuit his rebus, sed etiam præfuit.
Cic.

Non pauca ex his mutant dativum aliquoties in alium casum: ut,

Præstat ingenio alius alium. Quinct.

Est pro habeo regit dativum: ut,

Est mihi namque domi pater, est injusta noverca.

Virg.

Huic simile est suppetit: ut,

Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppetit usus. Hor.

SUM, cum multis aliis, geminum admittit dativum: ut,

Eritio est avidis mare nautis. Hor.

Speras tibi laudi fore, quod mihi vitio vertis?

Est ubi hic dativus, tibi, aut sibi, aut etiam mihi, elegantiae causâ additur: ut,

Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo. Ter.

IV. Accusativus post Verbum.

*The Accusative case after the Verb.**

Verba transitiva cujuscunque generis, sive activi, sive deponentis, sive communis, exigunt accusativum: ut,

Percontatorem fugito, nam garrulus idem est. Hor.

* ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. Verbs transitive, governing other cases, govern also an accusative of the object, i. e. of the noun which admits not a sign before it: as, *sic parvis componere magna solebam. Virg. Mortem ei minitatur. Cic.*

2. Verbs of asking take often an ablative of the person: as, *veniamque oramus ab ipso. Virg.* And verbs of clothing have this variety, *induo te tunicâ, vel tibi tunicam.*

3. The poets sometimes use a dative, instead of an accusative with a preposition, after verbs of motion: as, *it clamor calo. Virg.*

Aper

Aper ¹*agros* ²*depopulatur*.

Inprimis ³*venerare* ⁴*deos*.

VERBA neutra accusativum habent cognatæ significationis: ut,

Duram ⁵*servit* ⁶*servitutem*.

Sunt quæ figuratè accusativum habent: ut,
Nec vox ⁷*hominem* ⁸*sonat*, *ô dea certé!* Virg.

VERBA rogandi, docendi, vestiendi, celandi, ferè duplicem regunt accusativum: ut,

Tu modo ⁹*posce* ¹⁰*deos* ¹¹*veniam*. Virg.

¹²*Dedocebo* ¹³*te* ¹⁴*istos* ¹⁵*mores*.

Ridiculum est ¹⁶*te* ¹⁷*istuc* ¹⁸*me* ¹⁹*admonere*. Ter.

²⁰*Induit* ²¹*se* ²²*calceos*, *quos priùs exuerat*.

²³*Ea ne* ²⁴*me* ²⁵*celet*, *consuefeci filium*. Ter.

Hujusmodi verba etiam in passivâ voce accusativum post se habent: ut,

²⁶*Posceris* ²⁷*exta* ²⁸*bovis*.

NOMINA appellativa adduntur ferè cum præpositione verbis quæ denotant motum: ut,

²⁹*Ad templum Palladis* ³⁰*ibant*.

V. Ablativus post Verbum.

*The Ablative case after the Verb.**

QUODVIS verbum admittit ablativum significantem instrumentum, aut causam, aut modum actionis: ut,

Hi ³¹*jaculis*, *illi certant* ³²*defendere* ³³*saxis*. Virg.

Vehe-

* ABLATIVE CASE.

1. The instrument never admits a preposition: the cause and manner often do, and that too with great propriety; as, *præ ira*, *magnâ cum celeritate*, *magnâ de causâ*.

2. But *æstimo* sometimes governs these ablatives, *magno*, *permagno*, *parvo*, *nihilò*: as, *tu ista permagno æstimas*. Cic.

3. *Valco* sometimes governs an accusative: as, *denos æris valebant*. Varro.

The

Vehementer ^{bird} *excanduit.*

Mirā ^b *celeritate rem* ^a *peregit.*

Quibusdam verbis subjicitur nomen pretii in ablativo casu: ut,

^b *Teruncio, seu vitiosā* ^b *nuce non* ^a *emerim.*

Multorum ^b *sanguine ac* ^b *vulneribus ea* *Pœnis victoria* ^a *stetit.* Liv.

VILI, paulo, minimo, magno, nimio, plurimo, dimidio, duplo, per se sæpe pōnuntur, subauditā voce pretio: ut,

^b *Vili* ^a *venit triticum.*

Excipiuntur hi genitivi sine substantivis positi: *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, tantidem, quantivis, quantilibet, quanticunque, &c.:* ut,

^b *Tanti* ^a *eris aliis, quanti tibi* ^a *fueris.* Cic.

FLOCCI, nauci, nihili, pili, assis, hujus, teruncii, verbis æstimandi peculiariter adduntur: ut,

Ego illum ^b *floci* ^a *pendo, nec* ^b *hujus* ^a *facio, qui me* ^b *pili* ^a *æstimat.*

VERBA abundandi, implendi, onerandi, et his diversa, ablativo junguntur: ut,

^b *Amore* ^a *abundus, Antipho.* Ter.

The ablative is most common: as, *valet sestertiis vicenis. Pro nihilo habere* is a phrase of common use.

4. The ablative after *muto* is the thing taken in exchange; as, *muto librum pecuniā:* but by an hypallage, which Horace is fond of, it may be *muto pecuniam libro.*

5. The English signs of the ablative case absolute are, *having, being, a participle in ing,* or the particles *when, after, since, &c.* As, *having made this speech, when* he had made this speech, or, *this speech being made,* he dismissed the assembly, *hæc habita oratione, consilium dimisit.* Cæs.

6. Deponents with these signs commonly agree with the nominative of the sentence in the participle perfect: as, *cohortatus suos, prælium commisit.* Cæs.

7. Sometimes the English conjunction *and* being left out, a clause is rendered by the ablative case absolute: as, *he made the signal, and attacked the enemy: signo dato, hostes invasit.*

8. The participle *existente* is often understood: as, *me duce. Diis inuitis. Bruto consule.*

9. The preposition is sometimes omitted by poetic licence before the ablative: as, *scriberis Vario, Mæoni carminis alite.* Hor.

Sylla

*Sylla omnes suos ^bdivitiis ^aexplevit. Sall.
Te quibus ^bmendaciis homines levissimi ^aonerdrunt?*

Cic.

Te hoc ^bcrimine ^aexpedi. Ter.

Ex quibus quædam nonnunquam genitivum regunt:
ut,

*^aImplentur veteris ^bBacchi, pinguisque ^bferinæ. Virg.
Quasi tu hujus ^aindigeas ^bpatris. Ter.*

FUNGOR, fruor, utor, vescor, dignor, muto, communico,
supersedeo, ablativo junguntur: ut,

*Qui adipisci veram gloriam volet, justitiæ ^afungatur
^bofficiis. Cic.*

Optimum est aliend ^afrui ^binsaniâ.

In re malâ, ^banimo si bono ^autare, juvat.

^aVescor ^bcarnibus.

Haud equidem tali me ^adignor ^bhonore. Virg.

Diruit, ædificat, ^amutat quadrata ^brotundis. Hor.

^aCommunicabo te ^bmensâ meâ.

Verborum ^bmultitudine ^asupersedendum est.

MEREO, cum adverbis, bene, malè, meliùs, pejùs,
optimè, pessimè, ablativo jungitur cum præpositione de:
ut,

^bDe me nunquam ^abene meritus est.

QUÆDAM accipiendi, distandi, et auferendi verba,
aliquando dativo junguntur: ut,

Paulùm sepultæ ^adistat ^binertiæ

Celata virtus. Hor.

^aEripe te ^bmoræ. Ibid.

QUIBUSLIBET verbis additur ablativus absolutè sump-
tus: ut,

*^bImperante ^bAugusto, ^anatus est Christus; ^bimperante
^bTiberio, ^acrucifixus.*

^bMe ^bduce tutus ^aeris. Ovid.

VERBIS quibusdam additur ablativus partis affectæ,
et poëtice accusativus: ut,

^aÆgrotat ^banimo magis quàm ^bcorpore.

^aCandet ^bdentes. ^aRubet ^bcapillos.

Quædam

Quædam usurpantur etiam cum genitivo : ut,
Absurdè facis, qui ^aangas te ^banimi. Plaut.

VERBA PASSIVA.

Verbs Passive.

PASSIVIS additur ablativus agentis, sed antecedente
^a vel *ab* præpositione : et interdum dativus : ut,
^a*Laudatur ^bab his, ^aculpatur ^bab illis.* Hor.
^a*Honesta bonis ^bviris, non occulta, ^aquærentur.*
 Cæteri casus manent in passivis, qui fuerunt activo-
 rum : ut,

^a*Accusaris à me ^bfurti. ^aHabeberis ^bludibrio.*

^a*Dedoceberis à me istos ^bmores. ^aPrivaberis ^bmagi-
 stratu.*

VAPUÏO, veneo, liceo, exulo, fio, neutro-passiva, pas-
 sivam constructionem habent : ut,

^a*A præceptore ^bvapulabis.*

Malo à cive spoliari quàm ^bab hoste ^avenire.

Virtus parvo pretio ^alicet ^bab omnibus.

Cur ^bà convivantibus ^aexulat philosophia?

Quid ^afiet ^bab illo?

VERBA INFINITA.

*Verbs of the Infinitive Mood.**

VERBIS quibusdam, participiis, et adjectivis, ad-
 duntur verba infinita, et poëtice substantivis : ut,

^b*Dicere quæ puduit, ^bscribere ^ajussit amor.* Ovid.

^a*Jussus ^bconfundere fœdus.* Virg.

Erat tum ^adignus ^bamari. Ibid.

^a*Tempus ^babire tibi.*

Ponuntur

* VERBS of the Infinitive Mood.

1. The English infinitive, after any forms of the verb *to be*, is rendered
 always by a Latin future participle ; the active infinitive by the future in
sum, the passive infinitive by the future in *dus*; as, I am *to teach*, *sum doc-*
endus - I am *to be taught*, *sum docendus*.

2. The

Ponuntur interdum sola, per ellipsin, verba infinita: ut,
Hinc ^bspargere voces
In vulgum ambiguas, et ^bquærere conscius arma. Virg.
 Hic subauditur *incipiebat*.

GERUNDIA ET SUPINA.

*Gerunds and Supines.**

GERUNDIA et SUPINA regunt casus suorum verborum: ut,

Efferor studio ^bpatres vestros ^avidendi. Cic.

^aUtendum est ^aætate: cito pede præterit ætas. Ovid.

^aScitatum ^boracula Phæbi

Mittimus. Virg.

1. GERUNDIA.

I. Gerunds.

GERUNDIA in *di* eandem cum genitivis constructionem habent, et pendent à quibusdam tum substantivis tum adjectivis: ut,

Cecropias innatus apes ^aamor urget ^bhabendi. Virg.

Æneas celsâ in puppi jam ^acertus ^beundi. Ibid.

GERUNDIA in *do*, eandem cum ablativis; et Gerundia in *dum*, cum accusativis, constructionem obtinent: ut,
Scribendi ratio conjuncta ^acum ^bloquendo est. Quint.

2. The English infinitive signifying *to the end that*, has various constructions; as, he sent trusty men to fetch the fleet, *certos misit, qui (ut) classem arcesserent: classem arcessendi causâ, classis arcessendæ causâ, ad classem arcessendam, arcessitum classem, classem arcessituros.*

* GERUNDS and SUPINES.

1. The gerund in *di* has sometimes a genitive plural after it; as, *facultas agrorum suis latronibus condonandi.* Cic. *Date crescendi copiam novarum.* Ter.

2. The poets use the infinitive sometimes for the gerund: as, *studium quibus arva tueri.* Virg.

3. Gerunds in *do* are sometimes datives: as, *non est solvendo.* Cic. *aptus* is understood.

4. The poets use an infinitive for the gerund in *dum*, by a Greek phrase: as, *Loricam donat—habere viro.* Virg. for *habendam*.

5. Also for the supine in *um*; as, *pecus egit altos visere montes.* Hor.

Alitur vitium, ^avivitque, ^btegendo. Virg.

Locus ^aad ^bagendum amplissimus. Cicero.

Cum significatur necessitas, ponuntur gerundia in *dum* citra præpositionem, addito verbo *est*: ut,

^aOrandum ^best, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano. Juv.

^aVigilandum ^best ei, qui cupit vincere.

Vertuntur etiam gerundia in nomina adjectiva: ut,

Ad ^baccusandos ^ahomines duci præmio proximum latrocinio est.

H. SUPINA.

II. *Supines.*

SUPINUM in *um* activè significat, et sequitur verbum, aut participium, significans motum ad locum: ut,

^bSpectatum ^aveniunt, veniunt spectentur ut ipsæ. Ovid.

Milites sunt ^amissi ^bspeculatum arcem.

SUPINUM in *u* passivè significat, et sequitur nomina adjectiva: ut,

Quod ^bfactu ^afædum est, idem est et ^bdictu ^aturpe.



DE TEMPORE ET LOCO.

Nouns of Time and Place.

I. TEMPUS. *Time.*

QUÆ significant partem temporis, in ablativo frequentius ponuntur: ut,

Nemo mortalium omnibus ^bhoris ^asapit. Plin.

QUÆ autem durationem temporis significant, in accusativo ferè ponuntur: ut,

Hic jam ter centum totos ^aregnabitur ^bannos. Virg.

Dicimus etiam: *^aIn paucis ^bdiebus. ^aDe ^bdie. ^aDe ^bnocte.*

Promitto ^ain ^bdiem. Commodo ^ain ^bensem.

^bAnnos ^aad quinquaginta natus. ^aPer tres ^bannos studui.

^aPuer ^bid ætatis. Non ^aplus ^btriduum, aut, ^btriduo.

^bTertio, vel, ^aad ^btertium calendas, vel, calendarum.

II. SPA-

II. SPATIUM LOCI.

The Space of a Place.

SPATIUM loci in accusativo ponitur; interdum et in ablativo: ut,

Jam mille ^bpassus ^aprocesseram.

^aAbest ab urbe quingentis ^bmillibus passuum.

Item, *^aAbest bidui*: ubi intelligitur *^bspatium* vel *^bspatio*, *^bitinere* vel *iter*.

III. NOMINA LOCORUM.

*The Names of Places.**

OMNE verbum admittit genitivum oppidi nominis, in quo fit actio; modò primæ vel secundæ declinationis, et singularis numeri sit: ut,

Quid ^bRomæ ^afaciam? mentiri nescio. Juv.

Hi genitivi *humi*, *domi*, *militiæ*, *belli*, propriorum sequuntur formam: ut,

Parvi sunt foris arma, nisi ^aest consilium ^bdomi. Cic.

Undè semper ^bmilitiæ, et ^bdomi ^afuimus. Ter.

Verùm si oppidi nomen pluralis duntaxat numeri, aut tertiæ declinationis fuerit, in ablativo ponitur: ut,

Colchus, an ^aAssyrus; ^bThebis ^anutritus, an ^bArgis.

Hor.

Romæ Tibur ^aamem ventosus, ^bTibure Romam. Hor.

VERBIS significantibus motum ad locum ferè additur nomen loci in accusativo sine præpositione: ut,

^aConcessi ^bCantabrigiam ad capiendum ingenii cultum.

* THE NAMES OF PLACES.

1. Known by answering the question *where?* is the Genitive.
2. Known by answering the question *whither?* is the Accusative.
3. Towns in *e* of the first declension require *urbs* expressed: as, *in urbe Mytilenes habitat.*
4. The names of people and countries generally have prepositions prefixed: as, *è Sicilia discessit. In Galliam proficiscitur.* But the poets sometimes omit the preposition: as, *Sitientes ibimus Afros. Italiam venit.* Virg. Countries too are used like nouns in the genitive by poetic licence: as, *non est aptus equis Ithacæ locus.* Hor.
5. The genitive *domi* admits no adjectives but *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, *aliena*. *Domos* is also used in the accusative plural without the preposition, as *domum* in the singular.

Ad hunc modum utimur *domus* et *rus* : ut,
^aIte^b domum saturæ, venit Hesperus, ite, capellæ. Virg.
Ego^b rus^a ibo.

VERBIS significantibus motum à loco ferè additur
 nomen loci in ablativo sine præpositione : ut,
Nisi antè^b Romæ^a profectus esses, nunc eam relinqueres.

VERBA IMPERSONALIA.

*Verbs Impersonal.**

IMPERSONALIA nominativum non habent : ut,

^aJuvat ire sub umbras.

Hæc impersonalia, *interest* et *refert*, quibuslibet ge-
 nitivis junguntur, præter hos ablativos fœmininos, *med*,
tud, *sud*, *nostrd*, *vestrd*, et *cujd* : ut,

^aInterest^b magistratûs tueri bonos, animadvertere in malos.

^bTud^a refert teipsum nôsse.

Adduntur et hi genitivi, *tanti*, *quant*, *magni*, *parvi*,
quanticunque, *tantidem* : ut,

^bTanti^a refert honesta agere.

DATIVUM postulant impersonalia acquisitivè posita :
 quæ autem transitivè ponuntur, accusativum : ut,

A Deo^b nobis^a benefit.

^bMe^a juvat ire per altum.

His verò, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *spectat*, propriè additur
 præpositio *ad* : ut,

Me vis dicere quod^b ad te^a attinet. Ter.

^aSpectat^b ad omnes bene vivere.

His impersonalibus subjicitur accusativus cum ge-

* VERBS IMPERSONAL.

1. *Capit*, *incipit*, *desinit*, *debet*, *solet*, *potest*, joined to impersonals, be-
 come impersonals themselves : as, *Tot res circumvallant, unde emergi non
 potest.* Ter. i. e. à nobis, for *emergere non possumus*.

2. *Decet* governs sometimes a dative case, and *oportet* a subjunctive
 mood with *ut* expressed or understood : as, *ita nobis decet.* Ter. *Valeat
 possessor oportet, si comportatis rebus bene cogitat uti.* Hor.

nitivo,

nitivo, *pænitet, tædet, miseret, miserescit, pudet, piget*; ut,

Si ad centesimum virisset annum, senectutis beum suæ non pæniteret. Cic.

Miseret me tui.

VERBUM impersonale passivæ vocis pro singulis personis utriusque numeri eleganter accipi potest: ut,

Statur; id est, *sto, stas, stat, stamus, statis, stant*; videlicet ex vi adjuncti casus: ut, *Statur à me*, id est, *sto*: *Statur ab illis*, id est, *stant*.

PARTICIPIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Participles.

PARTICIPIA regunt casus verborum à quibus derivantur: ut,

Duplices tendens ad sidera palmas,

Talia voce refert. Virg.

PARTICIPIIS passivæ vocis additur interdum dativus, præsertim si exeunt in *du*: ut,

Magnus civis obiit, et formidatus Othoni.

Restat Chremes, qui mihi exorandus est. Ter.

PARTICIPIA, cum fiunt nomina, genitivum exigunt: ut,

Alieni appetens, sui profusus. Sall.

EXOSUS, perosus, pertæsus, activè significantia, accusativum exigunt: ut,

Astronomus exosus ad unam mulieres.

Immundam segnitiam perosæ.

Pertæsus ignaviam suam. Suet.

EXOSUS et perosus, passivè significantia, cum dativo leguntur: ut,

Exosus Deo et sanctis.

Germani Romanis perosi sunt.

NATUS, prognatus, satus, cretus, creatus, ortus, editus, ablativum exigunt; et sæpe cum præpositione: ut,

Bona bonis prognata parentibus.

Sate sanguine divum! Virg.

Quo sanguine cretus. Ib.

Venus orta mari mare præstat cuncti. Ovid.

Terræ editus.

Edita de magno flumine nympha fui.

ADVERBIORUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Adverbs.

Ex et ecce, demonstrandi adverbia nominativo frequentius junguntur, accusativo rarius: ut,

En Priamus. Virg.

Ecce tibi status noster. Cic.

— En quatuor aras:

Ecce duas tibi, Daphni, duoque altaria Phæbo.
Virg.

En et ecce, exprobrandi, soli accusativo junguntur: ut,

En animum et mentem. Juv.

Ecce autem alterum. Ter.

QUÆDAM adverbia loci, temporis, et quantitatis, genitivum admittunt.

1. LOCI; ut, ubi, ubinam, nusquam, eò, longè, quò, ubivis, hucine, &c.: ut,

Ubi gentium?

Nusquam loci invenitur.

Eò impudentiæ ventum est.

Quò terrarum abiit?

2. TEMPORIS; * ut, nunc, tunc, tum, interea, pridie, postridie, &c.: ut,

Nihil tunc temporis ampliùs, quàm flere, poteram.

Pridie ejus diei pugnam inierunt.

Pridie calendarum, vel calendas.

3. QUANTITATIS; ut, parùm, satis, abundè, &c.: ut,

Satis eloquentiæ, sapientiæ parùm. Sall.

Abundè fabularum audivimus.

* CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS OF TIME.

But we use *Calendæ*, *Nonæ*, and *Idus*, in the accusative (*ante* being understood) rather than in the genitive, after *pridie*, *tertiò*, *quarto*, and other *numeral* adverbs.

QUÆDAM

QUÆDAM casus admittunt nominum, unde deducta sunt : ut,

^bSibi ^ainutiliter vivit.

^aProximè ^bHispaniam Mauri sunt. Sall.

^aMeliùs vel ^aoptimè ^bomnium. Cic.

^aAmplius ^bopinionè morabatur. Sall.

ADVERBIA diversitatis, *aliter, secùs*; et illa duo, *antè, pòst*, ablativo non rarè junguntur : ut,

^bMulto ^aaliter. ^bPaulo ^asecùs.

^bMulto ^aantè. ^bPaulo ^apòst.

Longo ^apòst ^btempore venit. Virg.

INSTAR et *ergò*, adverbialiter sumpta, genitivum post se habent : ut,

^aInstar ^bmontis equum divinè Palladis arte ædificant. Virg.

Donari ^bvirtutis ^aergò. Cic.

CONJUNCTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Conjunctions.**

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ, et disjunctivæ, similes casus, modos, et tempora conjungunt : ut,

Socrates docuit ^a*Xenophontem* ^{et} ^a*Platonem*.

Recto ^a*stat corpore*, ^b*despicitque terras*.

Nec ^b*scribit*, ^a*nec* ^b*legit*.

Nisi variæ constructionis ratio aliud poscat : ut,

Emi librum ^a*centussi* ^{et} ^a*pluris*.

Viri

* CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

1. The conjunctions, *autem, verò, enim, quoque*, and the adverb *quidem*, stand not first in a sentence; *etenim, sed, ergo, igitur, itaque*, first or second.

2. A conjunction is often put before the word that stands first in connexion, for the sake of emphasis: as, *montesque feri sylvasque loquuntur*. Vir.

3. *Cùm* and *tum*, or *tum* repeated, are so used to give emphasis to the latter word in connexion; as *luxuria cùm omni ætati turpis, tum fadissima est senectuti*. Cic.

4. Two negatives sometimes affirm, after the Greek manner; *nulla neque annem libavit quadrupes*. Vir.

Con-

*Viri *Romæ 'et *Venetiis.*

Nisi me 'lactāsses amantem, 'et falsā spe 'produceres.

QUAM sæpe intelligitur post *ampliūs, plūs, et minūs* :
ut,

**Ampliūs sicut 'sex menses. Cic.*

Paulo 'plūs 'trecenta vehicula sicut amissa. Liv.

Nunquam nix 'minūs 'quatuor pedes alta jacuit. Liv.

CONJUNCTIONS and ADVERBS governing ;

1. The Subjunctive ;

An, ne, num, indefinites

Cūm, since, or because

Dum, provided that

Demmodo, provided that

Licet, although

Modo, provided that

Ne, lest

O si, I wish

Quò, to the end that

Quon, since, or because

Quin, for ut non, quod non, quò minūs

Quippe cūm, seeing that

Si, although

Utinam, I wish

Ut, I wish, and although

U't, that, or, to the end that, or the final cause

Ut, for ne non, after verbs of fearing

Utpote cūm, seeing that

2. Indicative ;

An, ne, num, interrogatives

Cūm, both, followed by tum, and

Dum, } whilst, or as long as

Donec, } after that

Postquam, } after that

Postquam, } after that

Quin for cur non ? why not ?

Quandoquidē, since

Quoniam, since

Quippe, because

Tum, and, answered by cūm

U't, after that, as, and how ! in admiration.

Note, *ne* indefinite and interrogative is known from *ne, lest, or not*, by being put after the word it governs.

3. A Subjunctive, if used indefinitely ; or an Indicative, if used positively :

Antequam, before

Ceu, as if

Cūm, when, Adv. of time

Donec, until

Dum, until

Etsi, } although

Etiamsi, } although

Haud secūs ac si, as if

Ni, nisi, unless

Perinde quasi, } as if

Perinde ac si, } as if

Priusquam, before

Quamquam, although

Quamvis, although

Quasi, as if

Quando, when, Adv. of time

Quoad, as long as, so far as

Quòd, that

Quia, because

Quippe qui, as being one who

Quon, when, Adv. of time

Si, if

Sin, but if

Siquidem, for as much

Simul, simul ac, simul atque, simul

ut, as soon as

Tanquam, as if

Tametsi, although

Ubi, as soon as

Utpote qui, as being one who

QUIBUS

QUIBUS verborum modis quædam congruant adverbia et conjunctiones.

NE, *an*, *num*, dubitative aut indefinite posita, subjunctivo junguntur: ut,

Nihil refert ^b*fecerisne* ^a*an persuaseris.*

Vise, ^a*num* ^b*redierit.*

DUM, pro *dummodo* et *quousque*, subjunctivum postulat: ut,

^a*Dum* ^b*prosim tibi.*

Tertia ^a*dum regnantem* ^b*viderit æstas.*

QUI, causam significans, subjunctivum exigit: ut, *Stultus es* ^a*qui huic* ^b*credas.*

UT, pro *postquam*, *sicut*, et *quomodo*, indicativo jungitur: cum autem *quoniam*, *utpote*, vel *finale* causam denotat, subjunctivo: ut,

^a*Ut* ^b*sumus in Ponto, ter frigore constitit Ister.* Ovid.

^a*Ut tute* ^b*es, ita omnes censes esse.* Plaut.

^a*Ut omnia* ^b*contingant, quæ volo, levare non possum.*

Cic.

Non est tibi fidendum, ^a*ut qui toties* ^b*fefelleris.*

Te oro, Dave, ^a*ut* ^b*redeat jam in viam.* Ter.

Omnes denique voces indefinite positæ, quales sunt *quis*, *quantus*, *quotus*, &c. subjunctivum postulant: ut,

^a*Cui* ^b*scribam video.* Cicero.

——— ^a*Quantus*

In clypeum ^a*assurgat,* ^a*quo turbine* ^b*torqueat hastam.* Virg.

PRÆPOSITIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

*The Construction of Prepositions.**

PRÆPOSITIO subaudita interdum facit ut addatur ablativus: ut,

Habeo te ^a*loco parentis,* id est, ^a*in loco.*

PRÆPOSITIO

* CONSTRUCTION OF PRÆPOSITIONS.

1. *Cum* is put after *me*, *te*, *se*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *quo*, &c. as *meum*.

2. *In* governs an accusative signifying *into*, as *in Galliam*; *towards*, in *Teucroa*.

PRÆPOSITIO in compositione eundem nonnunquam casum regit, quem et extra compositionem regebat: ut,

^a*Detrudunt naves* ^b*scopulo*. Virg.

^a*Prætereo* ^b*te insalutatum*.

VERBA composita cum *à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in*, nonnunquam repetunt easdem præpositiones cum suo casu extra compositionem, idque eleganter: ut,

^a*Abstinerunt à* ^b*vino*.

In pro *erga, contra, ad, et supra*, accusativum exigit: ut,

Accipit ^a*in* ^b*Teucros animum, mentemque benignam*.
Virg.

^a*In* ^b*commoda publica peccem*.

^a*In* ^b*regnum quæritur hæres*.

Reges ^a*in* ^b*bipsos imperium est Jovis*.

SUB, cum ad tempus refertur, accusativo ferè jungitur: ut,

^a*Sub idem* ^b*tempus*; i. e. *circa, vel, per idem tempus*.
Liv.

SUPER, pro *ultra*, accusativo; pro *de*, ablativo apponitur: ut,

—————^a*Super et* ^b*Garamantas, et* ^b*Indos*
Proferet imperium. —————

Multa ^a*super* ^b*Priamoro gitans, super* ^b*Hectore multa*.

TENUS ablativo et singulari et plurali jungitur: ut

^b*Pube* ^a*tenus*. ^b*Pectoribus* ^a*tenus*. Ovid.

Teucros animum; against, *in hostem tendit*; over, *in proprios greges imperium*; for, *in regnum quæritur hæres*; and in distributions, as *duodena in singulos homines jugera divisi*. Liv. In *horas*. Vir.

3. *In* governs an ablative signifying *in*, as *in Angliâ*; among, *in amicis te habeo*; on, *in saxo sede*.

4. *Super* governs an accusative signifying *beyond*; *super Garamantas et Indos*; besides, *super gratiam tuam*: among, or, during, *super canam*.

5. *Super* governs an ablative signifying *in* or *on*; as *super arbore residet*; concerning, *super Hectore rogatans*.

6. *Sub* governs an accusative signifying *to*, as *sub nubila fugit*; about, as *sub noctem*, *sub canam*; it governs an ablative signifying *under*, as *sub monte cœnedit*; and *in*, as *sub nocte silenti*.

7. *Tenus* and *versus* are always set after their case; *pends* before or after.

At

At genitivo tantum plurali, et semper casum suum sequitur: ut,

^bCrurum ^atenus. Virg.

INTERJECTIONUM CONSTRUCTIO.

The Construction of Interjections.

INTERJECTIONES non raro sine casu ponuntur: ut,

Spem gregis, "ah! silice in nudâ connixa reliquit. Virg.
Quæ, "malum, dementia!

O, exclamantis, nominativo, accusativo, et vocativo, jungitur: ut,

^aO festus ^bdies hominis! Ter.

^aO fortunatos nimium, sua si bona norint,

^bAgricolæ! Virg.

^aO formose ^bpuer! nimium ne crede colori. Ib.

Heu et proh, nunc nominativo, nunc accusativo, junguntur: ut,

^aHeu. ^bpietas, ^aheu prisca ^bfides. Virg.

^aHeu ^bstirpem invisam. Ib.

^aProh ^bJupiter, tu, homo, adigis me ad insaniam. Ter.

^aProh deum atque hominum ^bfidem.

Item vocat. ^aProh sancte ^bJupiter! Cic.

Hei et vae dativo junguntur: ut,

^aHei ^bmihi, quod nullis amor est medicabilis herbis.

Ovid.

^aVae misero ^bmihi, quanta de spe decidi! Ter.

PROSODIA.

PROSODIA est pars Grammaticæ, quæ quantitatem syllabarum docet.

Dividitur Prosodia in tres partes, *Tonum, Spiritum, et Tempus*.

Hoc loco visum est nobis de *Tempore* tantum tractare.

TEMPUS est syllabæ proferendæ mensura.

Tempus breve sic notatur ; ut, *Dōmīnūs*. Longum autem sic ; ut, *cōntrā*.

Pes duarum syllabarum pluriumve constitutio est ex certâ Temporum observatione.

Spondæus est dissyllabus : ut, *virtūs*.

Dactylus est trisyllabus : ut, *scribēre*.

SCANSIO est legitima versûs in singulos pedes commensuratio.

Scansioni accidunt figuræ, *Synalæpha, Ecthlipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et Cæsura*.

I. *Synalæpha* est elisio vocalis in fine dictionis, ante alteram in initio sequentis : ut;

Serā nīmīs vit' est crāstinā, viv' hōdiē. Mart.
pro *vita, vive*.

At *heu* et *ô* nunquam intercipiuntur.

II. *Ecthlipsis* est quoties *m* cum suâ vocali perimitur, proximâ dictione à vocali exorsâ : ut,

Mōnstr' hōrrēnd' infōrm' ingēns, cui lūmēn ādēmp-
tūm. Virg.

pro *monstrum horrendum informe*.

III. *Synæresis* est duarum syllabarum in unam contractio : ut,

Sēu lēntō fūērīnt ālveārīā vimīnē tēxtā. Virg.
quasi scriptum esset *alvaria*.

IV. *Diæresis* est, ubi ex unâ syllabâ disectâ fiunt duæ : ut,

Dēbūērānt fusōs ēvōlūissē sūōs. Ov. Ep.

~~evoluisse~~ pro *evolvisse*.

V. *Cæsura*

V. *Cæsura* est, cùm post pedem absolutum syllaba brevis in fine dictionis extenditur: ut,
Pēctoribūs inhians spirantia cōsultat extā. Virg.

DE GENERIBUS VERSUUM.*

VERSUS heroicus, qui *Hexameter* etiam dicitur, constat ex sex pedibus; quintus locus dactylum, sextus spondæum peculiariter sibi vindicat; reliqui hunc vel illum, prout volumus: ut,

Tityrē tū patulæ recubans sub tēgmīnē fagi. Virg.

Reperitur aliquando spondæus etiam in quinto loco: ut,

Cārā Dēū sobolēs, māgnū Jōvis incrēmētū. Virg.

Ultima cujuscunque versūs syllaba habetur communis.

VERSUS

* The following account of the different kinds of FEET, and the varieties of Verse into which they enter, will be found a very necessary supplement to the Eron Prosody.

The feet in common use are,

The Spondee; as virtūs.

Pyrrichius; as deūs.

Trochee; as pāns.

Iambus; as amāns.

Dactyle: as scribēre.

Tribrachys; as dōminūs.

Anapest; as piētās.

I. AN HEXAMETER VERSE.

An Hexameter verse consists of six feet, the first four either dactyles or spondees, the fifth a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee: as,

Tityrē | tū patū | lē recū | bāns sub | tēgmīnē | fagi. Vir.

Sometimes a spondee is put in the fifth place; and then the verse is called a Spondiac: as,

Cārā dē | ūm sobō | lēs, māg | nūm Jōvis | incrē | mētūm. Vir.

II. A PENTAMETER.

A Pentameter consists of two members, the first consisting of two feet, dactyles or spondees, and a long syllable; the second of two dactyles, and a common syllable; as,

Rēs est | sollicit | ū | plēnā ū | mōris ā | mōr. Ov.

* * The last syllable of every verse is accounted common.

III. A PHALEUCIAN, or HENDECASYLLABUS.

A Phaleucian consists of a spondee, dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Hic est | quē lēgis | illē | quē rē | quis. Mart.

IV. AN

VERSUS Elegiacus, qui et *Pentametri* nomen habet, è duplici constat penthemimeri: quarum prior duos pedes, dactylicos, spondiacos, vel alterutros comprehendit, cum syllabâ longâ: altera etiam duos pedes, sed omnino dactylicos, cum syllabâ item longâ: ut,
Rēs ēst sōlliciti plēnā timōris āmor. Ovid. Epist.

PRIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. Vocalis ante duas consonantes, aut duplicem in eādē dictione, ubique positione longa est: ut *vēntus, āris, patrīzo, cījus.*

II. Quod

IV. An IAMBIC.

An Iambic verse is either pure, or mixed; the pure consists only of Iambic feet.

The mixed Iambic admits in the odd places (*i. e.* 1st, 3d, 5th,) a tribrachys, spondee, dactyle, or anapest; and in the even places (2d and 4th) sometimes a tribrachys.

An Iambic verse of four feet is called a Dimeter; of six, a Trimeter.

Pure { *Trim.* Sūis | ēt ip | sâ Rō | mā vī | rībūs | rūit.
 { *Dim.* Inār | stt æ | sttō | stus. Hor.

Impure { *Trim.* At ō pdeo | rūm quic | quid in | celo | rēgit.
 { *Dim.* Terrās | ēt hū | mānūm | gēnus. Hor.

||†|| The comic poets, and Phædrus, use any of the fore-mentioned feet in the even and odd places indifferently, the sixth being excepted, which is always an Iambus.

V. A SCAZON.

The Scazon is the same with the Iambic, except that it has always an Iambus in the fifth place, and a Spondee in the sixth: as,

Cūr in | theā | trūm Cātō | sēvē | rē vē | nist. Mart.

VI. A SAPPHIC.

A Sapphic verse consists of a trochee, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees; and after every third verse an Adonic (a dactyle and spondee) is used to complete the stanza or strophe: as,

Inā | gēr vī | tē scēlē | risquē | pūrtis
 Nōn ē | gēt Māu | rī jactū | lis nēc | arcū:
 Nēc vē | nēnā | tis grāvi | dā sâ | gittis,
 Fūscē, phā | rētrā. Hor.

VII. An ASCLEPIAD.

An Asclepiad verse consists of a spondee, dactyle, long syllable, and then two dactyles: as,

Mācē | nās stā | vis | ēdne | rēgībūs. Hor.

VIII. A

II. Quod si consonans priorem dictionem claudat, sequente item à consonante inchoante, vocalis præcedens etiam positione longa erit: ut,

Mājor sūm quā́m cui pōssit fortūnā nocēre
Syllabæ *jor, sum, quam, et sit*, positione longæ sunt.

III. At si prior dictio in vocalem brevem exeat, sequente à duabus consonantibus incipiente, interdum, sed rariùs, producitur: ut,

Ōccūltā spōlīa, ēt plūrēs dē pācē trīumphos. Juv.

IV. Vocalis brevis ante mutam, sequente liquidā, communis redditur: ut *pātris, volūcris*. Longa verò non mutatur: ut *arātrum, simulāchrum*.

VIII. A GLYCONIAN.

A Glyconian verse consists of a spondee and two dactyles; as,

Sic tē | dīva pō | tēns Cypri. Hor.

IX. A PHERECRATIAN.

A Pherecratian verse consists of a spondee, dactyle, and a spondee; as,

Grātō | Pýrrhā sūb | ānrō. Har.

X. An ARCHILOCHIAN

An Archilochian is either trochaic or iambic.

The trochaic Archilochian consists of four feet, either dactyles or spondees, and three trochees; as,

Solvītūr | ācris hý | ēms grā | tā vicē | vērīs | et Fā | rōnī. Hor.

The iambic Archilochian has in the first and third places a spondee, sometimes in the first an iambus; but never in the third; in the second and fourth always an iambus, with a cæsura, or long syllable; as,

Lēns | quē sūb | noctēm | sūsūr | rī. Hor.

XI. An ALCAIC.

An Alcaic verse is of two sorts, the major and minor.

The Alcaic major consists of a spondee, sometimes an iambus, in the first place, then an iambus and long syllable, with two dactyles.

The Alcaic minor consists of two dactyles and two trochees.

They take the Archilochian iambic in the the third place, to complete the stanza: as,

Vidēs | ūt al | tā | stēt nīvē | cāndīdum

Sorāc | tē nēc | jān | sūstinē | ānt ōnus

Sylvās | lābō | rāntēs | gēlū | que

Flūmīnā | cōsultē | rint ā | cūto. Hor.

VOCALIS

VOCALIS ante alteram in eadem dictione ubique brevis est: ut *Dēus, mēus, tūus, pius*.

1. Excipias genitivos in *ius*, secundam pronominis formam habentes: ut, *unius, illius*, &c. Ubi *i* communis reperitur, licet in *alterius* semper sit brevis, in *alius* semper longa.

2. Excipiendi sunt etiam genitivi et dativi quintæ declinationis, ubi *e* inter geminum *i* longa fit: ut *faciēi*: alioqui non; ut, *rēi, spēi, fidēi*.

Fi etiam in *fo* longa est, nisi sequuntur *e* et *r* simul: ut *fierem, fieri*.

Ōmnīā jam fiunt fieri quæ possē negābam.

Dius primam syllabam habet longam, *Diana* communem.

Ohe interjectio priorem syllabam communem habet.

Vocalis ante alteram in Græcis dictionibus subinde longa fit: ut, *Dicite Pierides. Respice Læerten*.

Et in possessivis Græcis: ut, *Ænēia nutrix. Rhodopēius Orpheus*.

Omnis diphthongus apud Latinos longa est: ut, *aurum, neuter, musæ*: nisi sequente vocali; ut, *præire, præustus, præamplus*.

DERIVATIVA eandem ferè cum primitivis quantitatem sortiuntur: ut, *āmotor, āmicus, āmabilis*, primā brevi ab *āmo*.

Excipiuntur tamen pauca, quæ à brevibus deducta primam syllabam producant: ut,

*cōmo cōmis, à cōma,
fōmes, fōmentum, à fōveo,
hūmanus, ab hōmo,
jūcundus, à jūvo,
jūmentum, à jūvo,
jūnior, à jūvenis,
lāterna, à lāteo,
lēx lēgis, à lēgo.*

*mōbilis, à mōveo,
nōnus, à nōvem,
rēx rēgis, rēgina, à rēgo,
sēdes, à sēdeo,
tēgula, à tēgo,
trāgula, à trāho,
vōmer, à vōmo,
vōx vōcis, à vōco.*

Et

Et contrā sunt, quæ à longis deducta primam corripiunt : ut,
arena, arista, arundo, ab areo, | *gēnui, à gigno,*
aruspex, ab ara, | *lúcerna, à lúceo,*
dīcax, à dīco, | *nāto nātas, à nātu,*
dītio, à dītis, | *nōto nōtas, à nōtu,*
dīsertus, à dīssero, | *pōsui, à pōno,*
dux dūcis, à dūco, | *pōtui, à pōssum,*
fīdes, à fīo, | *sōpor, à sōpio.*
frāgor, frāgilis, à frāngo,

Et alia nonnulla ex utroque genere, quæ relinquuntur studiosis inter legendum observanda.

COMPOSITA simplicium quantitatem sequuntur : ut, à *lēgo lēgis, perlēgo* ; *lēgo, lēgas, allēgo* ; à *pōtens, impōtens* ; à *sōlor, consōlor*.

Excipiuntur tamen hæc brevīa à longis enata : *dejēro, pejēro, à jūro* ; *innūba, pronūba, à nūbo*.

OMNE præteritum dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *lēgi, ēmi, mōvi*.

1. Excipias tamen, *bībi, dēdi, scīdi, stēti, stīti, tūli, et fīdi, à findo*.

2. Primam præteriti geminātia primam brevem habent : ut, *cēcīdi à cado* ; *cēcīdi à cædo* ; *didīci, fēfelli, mōmordi, pēpendi, pūpugi, tētendi, tētigi, tōtondi, tūtudi*.

SUPINUM dissyllabum priorem habet longam : ut, *vīsum, lātum, lōtum, mōtum*.

Excipe *dātum, itum, litum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum, stātum* ; et *cītum à cieo cis* ; nam *cītum à cio cis*, quartæ, priorem habet longam.

ULTIMARUM SYLLABARUM QUANTITAS.

I. A FINITA producuntur ; ut, *amā, contrā, ergā*.

1. Excipias, *putā, itā, quā, postea, ejā* : item omnes casus in *a*, cujuscunque fuerint generis, numeri, aut declinationis : præter vocativos à Græcis in *as* ; ut, *ó Æneā, ó Thomā* : et ablativum primæ declinationis ; ut, *musā*.

3. Numeralia in *ginta* finalem habent communem, sed frequentius longam : ut, *trigintā*.

II. In *b, d, t*, desinentia brevia sunt : ut, *āb, ād, capūt*.

III. In *c* desinentia producuntur : ut, *āc, sic, et hīc* adverbium.

Sed duo in *c* corripuntur ; *nēc* et *donēc*.

Tria sunt communia ; *fāc*, pronomen *hūc*, et neutrum ejus *hōc*, modò non sit ablativi casus.

IV. *E* finita brevia sunt : ut, *marē, penē, legē, scribē*.

1. Excipiendæ sunt omnes voces quintæ inflexionis in *e* : ut, *fidē* et *diē*, unā cum particulis indē enatis : ut, *hodiē, quotidiē, pridīē, postridiē* ; item *quarē, quaderē, earē*, et si qua sunt similia.

2. Et secundæ item personæ singulares secundæ conjugationis : ut, *docē, movē*.

Producuntur etiam monosyllaba in *e* ; ut, *mē, tē, sē* ; præter *quē, nē, vē*, conjunctiones encliticas.

Quin et adverbia in *e*, ab adjectivis secundæ declinationis deducta, *e* longum habent ; ut *pulchrē, doctē, valdē* pro *validē*.

Quibus accedunt *fermē, ferē* ; *benē* tamen et *malē* corripuntur omnino.

Postremò, quæ à Græcis per *η* scribuntur, naturā producuntur, cujuscunque fuerint casus, generis, aut numeri ; ut, *Lethē, Anchisē, cetē, Tempē*.

V. *I* finita longa sunt : ut, *dominī, magistrī, amarī*.

Præter *mihi, tibi, sibi, ubi, ibi*, quæ sunt communia.

Nisi verò, et *quasi*, corripuntur.

Cujus etiam sortis sunt dativi et vocativi Græcorum, quorum genitivus singularis in *os* breve exit : ut, Dativ. *Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi* ; Vocat. *Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni*.

VI. *L* finita corripuntur : ut, *animāl, Annibāl, mēl, pugil, consūl*.

Præter *nīl* contractum à *nihil* ; *sāl, et sōl*.

Et Hebræa quædam in *el* : ut, *Michaël, Gabriël, Raphaël, Daniël*.

VII. *N* fi-

VII. *N* finita producuntur : ut, *Pæūn*, *Hymēn*, *quān*, *Xenophōn*, *nōn*, *dæmōn*.

Excipe, *forsān*, *forsitān*, *ān*, *tamēn*, *attamēn*, *veruntamēn*, et *in*.

Accedunt his et voces illæ, quæ apocopen patiuntur : ut, *mēn'* ? *vidēn'* ? *audīn'* ? etiam *exīn*, *subīn*, *deīn*, *proīn*.

In *an* quoque à nominativis in *a* ; ut, Nominativo, *Iphigenia*, *Ægina* ; Accus. *Iphigeniān*, *Æginān*. Nam in *an* à nominativis in *as* producuntur : ut, Nom. *Æneas*, *Marsyas* ; Accus. *Æneān*, *Marsyān*.

Nomina item in *en*, quorum genitivus *inis* correptum habet : ut, *carmēn*, *crimēn*, *pectēn*, *tibicēn*, *-inis*.

Quædam etiam in *in* per *i* : ut, *Alexīn* : et in *yn* per *y* : ut, *Ityn*.

Græca etiam in *on* per *o* parvum, cujuscunque fuerint casus : ut, Nom. *Iliōn*, *Peliōn* ; Accus. *Caucasōn*, *Pylōn*.

VIII. *O* finita communia sunt : ut, *dicō*, *virgō*, *porrō*, Sic *docendō*, *legendō*, et alia gerundia in *do*.

Sed obliqui casus in *o* semper producuntur : ut, Dat. *dominō* ; *servō* ; Ablat. *templō*, *damnō*.

Et adverbia ab adjectivis derivata : *tantō*, *quantō*, *liquidō*, *falsō*, *primō*, *manifestō*, &c. præter, *sedulō*, *mutuō*, *crebrō*, quæ sunt communia.

Cæterum *modō* et *quomodō* semper corripiuntur.

Citō quoque, ut et *ambō*, *duō*, *egō*, atque *homō*, vix leguntur producta.

Monosyllaba tamen in *o* producuntur : ut, *dō*, *stō*.

Item Græca per *ω*, cujusmodi fuerint casus : ut, Nom. *Sapphō*, *Didō*, Gen. *Androgeō*, *Apollō* ; Accus. *Athō*, *Apollō* : sic et *ergō* pro *causā*.

IX. *R* finita corripiuntur : ut, *Cæsār*, *pēr*, *vīr*, *uxōr*, *turbīr*.

Producuntur etiam *fār*, *Lār*, *Nār*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *cūr*, *pār*, quoque cum compositis : ut, *compār*, *impār*, *dispār*.

Græca etiam in *er*, quæ illis in *ηρ* desinunt : ut, *aēr*, *cratēr*,

cratēr, charactēr, æthēr, sotēr : præter *patēr*, et *matēr*, quæ apud Latinos ultimam brevem habent.

X. *S* finita pares cum numero vocalium habent terminationes : nempe, *as, es, is, os, us*.

1. *AS* finita producuntur : ut, *amās, musās, majestās, bonitās*.

Præter Græca, quorum genitivus singularis in *dos* exit : ut, *Arcās, Pallās* ; genitivo *Arcados, Pallados*.

Et præter accusativos plurales nominum crescentium : ut, *heros, heroos* ; *Phyllis, Phyllidos* ; accus. plur. *heroās, Phyllidās*.

II. *Es* finita longa sunt : ut, *Anchisēs, sedēs, docēs, patrēs*.

1. Excipiuntur nomina in *es* tertiæ inflexionis, quæ penultimam genitivi crescentis corripunt : ut, *milēs, şegēs, divēs*. Sed *ariēs, abiēs, pariēs, Cērēs* ; et *pēs*, unā cum compositis ; ut, *bipēs, tripēs* ; longa sunt.

2. *Es* quoque à *sum*, unā cum compositis, corripitur : ut, *potēs, adēs, prodēs, obēs*, quibus *penēs* adjungi potest.

3. Item neutra, et nominativi plurales Græcorum ; ut, *hippomanēs, cacoethēs, Cyclopēs, Naiadēs*.

III. *Is* finita brevia sunt : ut, *Parīs, panīs, tristīs, hilarīs*.

1. Excipe obliquos casus plurales in *is*, qui producuntur : ut, *musīs, mensīs, à mensa, dominīs, templīs* : et *quīs*, pro *quibus*.

2. Item producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis : ut, *Samnīs, Salamīs* ; genitivo *Samnītis, Salamīnis*.

3. Adde huc quæ in *is* contracta ex *eis* desinunt, sive Græca, sive Latina, cujuscunque fuerint numeri aut casus : ut, *Simoīs, Pyroīs, partīs, omnīs*, è *Simoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis*.

4. Et monosyllaba item omnia : ut, *vīs, līs*, præter *is* et *quīs* nominativos, et *bīs*.

5. Istis accedunt secundæ personæ singulares verbum in *is*, quorum secundæ personæ plurales desinunt in *itis*

itis, penultimâ productâ; unâ cum futuris optativi in *ris*: ut, *audīs, velīs, dederīs*; plural. *audītis, velītis, dederītis*.

iv. *Os* finita producuntur: ut, *honōs, nepōs, dominōs, servōs*.

Præter *compōs, impōs*, et *ōs ossis*.

Et Græca per *o* parvum: ut, *Delōs, chaōs, Palladōs, Phyllidōs*.

v. *Us* finita corripuntur: ut, *famulūs, regiūs, tempūs, amamūs*.

Excipiuntur producentia penultimam genitivi crescentis: ut, *salūs, tellūs*, genitivo *salūtis, tellūris*.

Longæ sunt etiam omnes voces quartæ inflexionis in *us*, præter nominativum et vocativum singulares: ut, gen. sing. *manūs*, nom. accus. voc. plur. *manūs*.

His accedunt etiam monosyllaba: ut, *crūs, thūs, mūs, sūs*.

Et Græca item per *es* diphthongum, cujuscunque fuerint casūs: ut, nom. *Panthūs, Melampūs*; gen. *Sap-phūs, Cliūs*.

Atque piis cunctis venerandum nomen Iesūs.

XI. Postremò *u* finita producuntur omnia: ut, *manū, genū, amatū, diū*.

PROPRIA QUÆ MARIBUS ;

OR, THE

GENDERS OF NOUNS

CONSTRUED.

PROPRIA *proper names quæ which tribuuntur are assigned maribus to the male kind dicas you may call mascula masculines ; ut as sunt are Divorum the names of the heathen gods ; Mars the god of war ; Bacchus the god of wine, Apollo the god of wisdom : Virorum the names of men ; ut as, Cato a noble Roman, Virgilius the poet Virgil : Fluviorum the names of rivers ; ut as, Tiberis the Tiber, Orontes a river by Antioch : Mensium the names of months ; ut as, October the month October : Ventorum the names of winds ; ut as, Libs the south-west wind, Notus the south wind, Auster the south wind.*

PROPRIA *nomina proper names referentia denoting foemineum sexum the female sex tribuuntur are given foemineo generi to the feminine gender ; sive whether sunt they are Dearum the names of goddesses ; ut as, Juno Jupiter's wife, Venus the goddess of beauty : Muliebria the names of women ; ut as, Anna Anne, Philotis Philote : Urbium the names of cities ; ut as, Elis a city of Peloponnesus, Opus a city of Locris : Regionum the names of countries ; ut as, Græcia Greece, Persis Persia : item also nomen the name insulæ of an island ; ceu as, Creta Crete, Britannia Britain, Cyprus Cyprus.*

Tamen but quædam some names urbium of cities sunt *excipienda to be excepted ; ut as, ista mascula these*

masculines ;

masculines; Sulmo a town in Italy, Agragas a town in Sicily: quædam neutralia some neuters; ut as, Argos a city in Peloponnesus, Tibur a city in Italy, Præneste a city of Italy; et also Anxur a city of Italy, quod which dat gives utrumque genus both the masculine and neuter gender.

APPELLATIVA the common names arborum of trees erunt will be muliebria feminines: ut as, alnus an alder-tree, cupressus a cypress-tree, cedrus a cedar-tree.

Spinus a sloe-tree mas is masculine, oleaster a wild olive-tree mas is masculine. Sunt these nouns are et also neutra of the neuter gender, siler a withy-tree, suber a cork-tree, thus a frankincense-tree, robur an oak, que and acer a maple-tree.

ETIAM also volucrum the names of birds; ceu as, passer a sparrow, hirundo a swallow: Ferarum of wild beasts; ut as, tigris a tiger, vulpes a fox: et and Piscium the names of fishes; ut as, ostrea an oyster, cetus a whale, sunt are dicta called epicœna nouns of the epicene gender, quibus to which vox ipsa the termination itself feret will give genus aptum the right gender.

ATTAMEN but notandum it is to be observed ex cunctis of all the nouns suprâ above mentioned, que and reliquis of those that follow, omne that every noun quod which exit in um ends in um, seu whether Græcum it be Greek sive or Latinum Latin, esse is genus neutrum of the neuter gender; sic also nomen a noun invariabile undeclined.

NOMEN a noun non crescens not increasing genitivo in the genitive case; ceu as, caro carnis flesh, capra capræ a she goat, nubes nubis a cloud, est is genus muliebri of the feminine gender.

NOMINA multa many nouns virorum denoting the offices of men in a ending in a dicuntur are called mascula masculines: ut as, scriba a scribe, assecla a page, securus
a buffoon.

a buffoon, et and rabula a pettifogger, lixa a sutler, lanista a master of gladiators.

Quot as many nouns as declinatio prima the first declension Græcorum of the Greeks fundit makes to end in as et and in es; et and quot as many Latin nouns as fiunt are derived ab illis from them per a ending in a, mascula are masculines; ut as, satrapas satrapa a Persian nobleman; athletes athleta a wrestler. Item also leguntur these are read mascula of the masculine gender, verres a boar pig, natalis one's birth-day, aqualis an ewe¹.

Nata nouns compounded ab asse of as a Roman coin or pound, ut as, centussis a hundred asses; conjunge join to these lienis the spleen, et and orbis any round thing, callis a path, caulis a stalk, follis bellows, collis a hill, mensis a month, et and ensis a sword, fustis a club, funis a rope, cenchris a kind of serpent, panis bread, crinis hair, et and ignis fire, cassis a toil or net, fascis a faggot, torris a fire-brand, sentis a thorn, piscis a fish, et and unguis a man's nail, et also vermis a worm, vectis a lever, postis a door-post, et also axis an axle-tree, societur may be joined.

In er nouns ending in er, ceu as, venter the belly; in os vel us, nouns ending in os or us, ut as, logos a word, annus a year, mascula are masculines.

At but sunt these nouns are fœminei generis of the feminine gender, mater a mother, humus the ground, domus a house, alvus a paunch, et and colus a distaff; et also ficus quartæ of the fourth declension pro for fructu a fig, que and acus a needle, porticus a porch, atque and tribus a tribe, socrus a mother-in-law, nurus a daughter-in-law, et and manus a hand, idus the ides of a month; huc to these anus an old woman, addenda est is to be added, huc to these mystica vannus the mystical fan Iacchi of Bacchus.

Jungas you may also join his to these Græca Greek nouns verientia changing os in us, os into us: papyrus paper, antidotus an antidote, costus the herb zedoary, diphthongus a diphthong, byssus fine flax, abyssus a bottomless

a bottomless pit, crystallus crystal, synodus an assembly, sapphirus a sapphire stone, eremus a desert, et and Arc-tus a set of stars called the Bear, cum with multis aliis many other nouns, quæ which nunc at this time perscribere to write at large longum est is tedious.

NOMEN *a noun in e ending in e, si if gignit is it makes is in the genitive case, neutrum is neuter, ut as, mare the sea, rete a net ; et and adde add quot whatever nouns legas you read in on ending in on, flexa peri which make i in the genitive case, ut as, barbiton a harp or lute. Hippomanes a raging humour in mares est is neutrum genus of the neuter gender, et and cacoëthes an ill habit neutrum is neuter, et also virus poison, pelagus the sea ; Vulgus the common people modò sometimes neutrum is neuter, modò sometimes mas is masculine.*

SUNT *these nouns are incerti generis of the doubtful gender, talpa a mole, et and dama a deer, canalis a chan-nel, et and cytissus hadder, balanus the fruit of the palm-tree, clunis a buttock, finis an end or limit, penus all provisions, amnis a river, pampinus a vine leaf, et and corbis a basket, linter a bark, torquis a chain, specus a cave, anguis a snake ; ficus, dans making fici in the ge-nitive case, pro morbo for a disease, atque and phaselus a pinnace, lecythus an oil cruse, ac and atomus an atom, grossus a green fig, pharus a watch-tower, et and para-disus paradise.*

COMPOSITUM *a noun compounded à verbo of a verb dans a ending in a, est is commune duorum the common of two genders ; Grajugena a Grecian born à from gigno to beget : agricola a farmer à from colo to till ; advena a stranger, à from venio to come, monstrant show id that.*

Adde add senex an old man or woman, auriga a cha-rioteer, et and verna a slave by birth, sodalis a companion, vates a prophet, extorris a banished man or woman, pa-truelis a cousin-german, que and perduellis an open ene-my in war, affinis one allied by marriage, juvenis a
young

young person, testis a witness, civis a citizen, canis a dog or bitch, hostis an enemy.

· **NOMEN** a noun est is genus muliebre of the feminine gender si if penultima syllaba the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sonat sounds acuta long or sharp: velut as hæc these nouns pietas pietâtis piety, virtus virtûtis virtue monstrant do show.

NOMINA quædam certain nouns monosyllaba of one syllable dicuntur are called mascula masculines, sal salt, sol the sun, ren a kidney, et and splen the spleen, Car a Carian, Ser a Chinese, vir a man or husband, vas vadis a surety, as a pound weight, mas the male kind, bes eight ounces, Cres a Cretan, præa a surety for money, et and pes a foot, glis a dormouse habens having gliris genitivo in the genitive case, mos a manner, flos a flower, ros dew, et and Tros a Trojan, mus a mouse, dens a tooth, mons a mountain, pons a bridge, et and simul also fons a fountain, seps pro for serpente a serpent, gryps a griffin, Thrax a Thracian, rex a king, grex gregis a flock of cattle, et and Phryx a Phrygian.

Etiam also polysyllaba nouns of more than one syllable, in n ending in n, sunt are mascula masculines: ut as, Acarnan a man of Acarnania, lichen a tetter, et and delphin a dolphin: et also in o nouns ending in o, signantia signifying corpus bodily substance; ut as, leo a lion, curculio the weasand or gullet: sic also senio the number six, ternio the number three, sermo a discourse.

In er, or, et os, nouns ending in er, or, and os, mascula are masculines: ceu as, crater a bowl, conditor a builder, heros a hero: His to these conjunge join torrens a land flood, nefrens a young pig, oriens the east, que and cliens a client, atque and bidens instrumentum a fork with two spikes, cum pluribus with many nouns in dens ending in dens: adde add to these gigas a giant, elephas an elephant, adamas a diamond, que and Garamas a man of Libya,

Libya, que also tapes *tapestry*, atque and *lebes* a *caldron*, sic so et also *magnes* a *loadstone*, que and unum nomen *one* noun quintæ of the fifth declension, *meridies* mid-day; et also quæ the nouns which componantur are compounded ab of *asse* a *pound weight*, ut *as*, *dodrans* nine ounces, *semis* half a pound.

Mascula these masculines jungantur may be joined, *Samnis* a *Samnite*, *hydrops* the *dropsy*, et and *thorax* the *breast*: jungas you may join quoque also mascula these masculines, *vervex* a *weather sheep*, *phoenix* a *phenix*, et and *bombyx* pro for *vermiculo* a *silk-worm*: Attamen yet ex his of these *siren* a *mermaid*, *necnon* and also *soror* a *sister*, *uxor* a *wife*, sunt are *muliebre* genus of the feminine gender.

ET also hæc nomina these nouns monosyllaba of one syllable sunt are *neutralia neuters*; *mel* *honey*, *fel* *gall*, *lac* *milk*, *far* *bread-corn*, *ver* the *spring*, *æs* *brass*, *cor* the *heart*, *vas* *vasis* a *vessel*, *os* *ossis* a *bone*, et and *os* *oris* a *mouth*, *rus* the *country*, thus *frankincense*, *jus* *right*, *crus* the *leg*, *pus* *corruption*.

Et also polysyllaba nouns of many syllables in al ending in al, que and in r ending in r; ut *as*, capital a *priest's veil*, *laquear* a *roof or ceiling*: *alec* a *sharp pickle* neutrum is *neuter*, *alex* a *kind of fish* *muliebre* is *feminine*.

SUNT these nouns are *dubii generis* of the doubtful gender; *scrobs* a *ditch*, *serpens* a *serpent*, *bubo* an *owl*, *rudens* a *cable*, *grus* a *crane*, *perdix* a *partridge*, *lynx* a *spotted beast*, *limax* a *snail*, *stirps* pro for *trunco* the *body of a tree*, et and *calx* *pedis* the *heel of the foot*.

Addē add dies a *day*, tantum only esto let it be *masculine* numero secundo in the plural number.

SUNT these nouns are *commune* of the common of two genders; *parens* a *father or mother*, que and *auctor* an *author*, *infans* an *infant*, *adolescens* a *young man or woman*, *dux* a *leader*, *illex* an *outlaw*, *hæres* an *heir*, *exlex* an *outlaw*.

Creata nouns compounded à of fronte a forehead; ut as, bifrons one with two faces, custos a keeper, bos an ox, bull, or cow, fur a thief, sus a swine, atque and sacerdos a priest or priestess.

NOMEN a noun est is *mas of the masculine gender, si if penultima the last syllable but one genitivi of the genitive case crescentis increasing sit be gravis short or flat: ut as, sanguis blood, genitivo in the genitive case sanguinis.*

HYPERDISSYLLABON let a noun of more than two syllables, in do ending in do, quod which dat makes *dinis in the genitive case, sit be foeminei generis of the feminine gender; atque also in go nouns ending in go, quod which make ginis in genitivo in the genitive case; dulcedo sweetness faciens making dulcedinis, monstrat shows id that tibi to you, que and compago compaginis a joint id shows the same. Adjice add virgo a virgin, grando hail, fides faith, compes a fetter, teges a mat, et and seges corn-land, arbor a tree, que and hyems winter: sic so chlamys a mantle, et and sindon fine linen, Gorgon Medusa's head, icon an image, et and Amazon an Amazon.*

Græcula Greek nouns finita ending in as, vel or in is; ut as, lampas a lamp, iaspis a jasper, cassis a helmet, cuspis the point of a weapon; item also mulier a woman, et and pecus cattle dans making pecudis in the genitive case.

Adde add his to these forfex a pair of shears, pellex a harlot, carex sedge, atque and simul also supellex household-stuff, appendix an appendage, hystrix a porcupine, coxendix a hip, que and filix fern.

NOMEN a noun in a ending in a, signans signifying rem a thing non animatam without life est is neutrale genus of the neuter gender; ut as, problema a question proposed: en nouns also ending in en; ut as, omen a token of good or bad luck: ar nouns ending in ar; ut as, jubar a sun-beam: ur dans nouns ending in ur; ut as, jecur

jecur the liver: us nouns in us; ut as, onus a burthen: put nouns ending in put; ut as, occiput the hinder part of the head.

Attamen but ex his of these pecten a comb, furfur bran, sunt are mascula masculines.

Sunt these nouns are neutra of the neuter gender, cadaver a carcase, verber a stripe, iter a journey, suber cork, tuber pro for fungo a mushroom, et and uber a teat, gingiber ginger, et and laser the herb benjamine, cicer a vetch, et and piper pepper, atque and papaver a poppy, et also siser a parsnip.

Addas you may add his to these neutra the neuters æquor a smooth surface, marmor marble, que and ador fine wheat, atque and pecus cattle, quando when facit it makes pecoris in genitivo in the genitive case.

SUNT these nouns are dubii generis of the doubtful gender, cardo a hinge, margo the brink or brim of a thing, cinis ashes, obex a bolt, forceps a pair of tongs, pumex a pumice stone, imbrex a gutter-tile, cortex the rind or bark of a tree, pulvis dust, que and adeps fat.

Add add, culex a gnat, natrix a water-serpent, et and onyx a precious stone, cum prole with its compounds, que and silex a flint, quamvis although usus use vult will have hæc these nouns meliùs rather dicier be called mascula masculines.

ISTA these nouns sunt are communis generis of the common of two genders; vigil a sentinel, pugil a champion, exul a banished man or woman, præsul a prelate, homo a man or woman, nemo nobody, martyr a martyr, Ligur a Ligurian, augur a soothsayer, et and Arcas an Arcadian, antistes a chief priest or priestess, miles a soldier, pedes a foot-man or woman, interpretes an interpreter, comes a companion, hospes a host or landlord: sic so ales any great bird, præses a president, princeps a prince or princess, auceps a fowler, eques a horse-man or woman, obses a hostage: atque and alia multa nomina many other nouns quæ which creantur are derived à verbis from verbs: ut as, conjux a husband or wife, judex a judge, vinde

vindex *an avenger*, opifex *a workman*, et and aruspex *a diviner*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* habentia *having* duntaxat *only* unam vocem *one termination*, ut *as*, felix *happy*, audax *bold*, retinent *keep* genus omne *every gender* sub unâ *under that one ending*; si *if* cadant *they fall* sub *under* geminâ voce *a double termination*, velut *as*, omnis *et and omne all*; vox prior *the former word* est *is* commune *with* duâ *the common of two genders*, vox altera *the second word* neutrum *is neuter*; at *but* si *if* variant *they vary* tres voces *the three endings*; ut *as*, sacer, sacra, sacrum *sacred*; vox prima *the first word* est *is* mas *masculine*, altera *the second* foemina *feminine*, tertia *the third* neutrum *is neuter*.

Obser. 1. At *but* sunt *there are* some *adjectives* quæ *which* vocares *you may call* substantiva *substantives* propè *in a manner* flexu *by their declining*: tamen *yet* reperta *they are found to be* adjectiva *adjectives* naturâ *by nature* quæ *and* usu *by use*. Talia *such* sunt *are* pauper *poor*, puber *ripe of age*, cum *with* degener *degenerate*, uber *fruitful*, et *and* dives *rich*, locuples *wealthy*, sospes *safe*, comes *accompanying or attending*, atque *and* superstes *surviving*, cum *with* paucis aliis *a few others* quæ *which* lectio *justa a due reading* docebit *will teach*.

Obs. 2. Hæc *these* *adjectives* gaudent *like* adsciscere *to take* sibi *to themselves* proprium *quendam* flexum *a certain* peculiar way of declining, campester *champaign*, volucer *swift*, celeber *famous*, celer *speedy*, atque *and* saluber *wholesome*; jungere *join* pedester *belonging to a foot-man*, equester *belonging to a horse-man*, et *and* acer *sharp*; jungere *join* paluster *marshy*, ac *and* alacer *cheerful*, sylvester *woody*.

At *but* tu *you* variabis *shall decline* hæc *these* *adjectives* sic *thus*: hic *celer in the masculine*, hæc *celeris in the feminine*, hoc *celere neutro in the neuter gender*; aut *or* aliter *otherwise* sic *thus*; hic atque hæc *celeris in the masculine and feminine*, rursum *again* hoc *celere est & tibi neutrum your neuter*.

NOUNS HETEROCLITE,

OR

IRREGULAR,

CONSTRUED.

QUÆ *those nouns which variant change genus their gender aut or flexum declension, quæcunque and whatsoever nouns novato ritu after a new manner deficient fall short ve or superant exceed in declining, sunt let them be called heteroclita heteroclites, or nouns irregular.*

CERNIS *you see hæc these nouns variantia varying partim in part genus their gender, ac and flexum their declining.*

Pergamus *the city Troy gignit makes Pergama, in plurali numero in the plural number.*

Prior numerus *the singular number dat gives his to these nouns neutrum genus the neuter gender, alter the plural utrumque both masculine and neuter; rastrum a rake cum with freno the bit of a bridle, filum a thread, simul atque and also capistrum a halter: item also Argos a town in Greece, et and cælum heaven sunt are neutra neuters singula in the singular number, sed but audi observe vocitabis you shall say duntaxat only, coelos, et and Argos in the plural number mascula masculines: sed but frena neuter et and frenos masculine, quo pacto after which manner formant they form et also cætera the rest.*

Pluralis numerus *the plural number solet is wont addere to add his to these genus utrumque both genders; sibilus a hissing, atque and jocus sport, locus a place: jungas you may join his to these quoque also plurima many more.*

PROPAGO *the stock quæ which sequitur follows est is manca defective casu in case ve or numero in number.*
 QUÆ

QUE nouns which variant vary *nullum casum no case; ut as, fas divine law, nil nothing, nihil nothing, instar likeness or proportion: et and multa many nouns in u ending in u, simul also in i; ut as sunt are hæc these que both cornu a horn, que and genu a knee; sic so gummi gum, frugi thrifty; sic so Tempe a pleasant vale in Thessaly, tot so many, quot how many, et and omnes numeros all nouns of number à tribus from three ad centum to a hundred vocabis you shall call aptota aptotes.*

QUE and nomen a noun cui vox cadit una that has but one case est is called *monoptoton a monoptote; ceu as, noctu by night, natu by birth, jussu by order, injussu without order, simul also astu by craft, promptu in readiness, permissu with leave: legimus we have read astus plurali in the plural number: legimus we have read inficias a denial, sed but vox ea sola that case alone reperta est is found.*

SUNT those nouns are called *diptota diptotes, quibus to which duplex flexura two cases remansit have remained: ut as, fors chance dabit will make forte, sexto in the ablative case, quoque also spontis of choice sponte: et and jugeris an acre dat makes jugere, sexto in the ablative case: atque and verberis a stripe verberere, quoque also suppetiæ aid dant makes suppetias, quarto in the accusative case; tantundem just so much dat makes tantidem, et and simul also impetis an attack dat makes impete in the ablative case; sic so repetundarum illegal exactions repetundis. Verberis a stripe cum with jugere an acre servant keep quatuor casus four cases, in numero altero in the plural number.*

VOCANTUR nouns are called *triptota triptotes, quibus in which inflectis you decline tres casus three cases: sic so est it is opis nostræ in our power, legis you meet with fer opem bring assistance, atque and dignus worthy ope of help: flecte decline preci prayer, atque and precem, et and blandus petit he complaisantly courts amicam caret mistress prece with entreaties: at but frugis fruit caret*
wants

wants tantum only recto the nominative case, et and also ditionis rule ; vox the word vis force est is integra entire, nisi unless fortè perhaps dativus the dative case desit be wanting : Jungas you may join his to these vicis a turn atque and vicem et and vice ; quoque also plus more habet has pluris, et and plus, quarto in the accusative case : numerus alter the plural number datur is given omnibus his to all these nouns.

NOTES *you may observe propria cuncta all proper names, quibus est which have natura a nature coercens restraining them ne fuerint from being plurima plurals ; et and alia multa many other nouns occurrent tibi will fall in your way legenti in reading, raro seldom excedentia exceeding numerum primum the singular number.*

MASCULA *these masculines sunt are contenta confined numero secundo to the plural number tantum only, manes ghosts, majores ancestors, cancelli lattices, liberi children, et and antes the fore ranks of vines, lendes nits, et and lemures spectres, simul also fasti annals, atque and minores posterity, natales, cum when assignant it signifies genus an extraction ; adde add, penates household gods, et and loca names of places plurali of the plural number, quales as, que both Gabii a city in Italy, que and Locri the inhabitants of Locris, et and quæcunque whatever nouns similis rationis of like nature legas you may read passim in authors.*

Hæc these nouns sunt are foeminei generis of the feminine gender, que and numeri secundi of the plural number, exuviæ any thing stript off from the body, phaleræ horse-trappings, que and grates thanks, manubiæ the spoils of war, et and idus the ides of a month, antiæ a forelock et and induciæ a truce, simul also que both insidiæ an ambush que and minæ threats, excubiæ watch by day or night, nonæ the nones of a month, nugæ trifles, que and tricæ toys, calendæ the calends of a month, quisquilæ the sweepings or refuse of any thing, thermæ a hot-bath, cunæ a cradle, diræ curses, que and exequiæ funeral rites, feriæ holidays, et and inferiæ sacrifices performed to

to the dead, sic so que both primitiæ the first fruits of the year, que and plagæ signantes signifying retia nets, et and valvæ folding doors, que and divitiæ riches, item also nuptiæ a marriage, et and lactes the small guts; Thebæ Thebes, et and Athenæ Athens addantur may be added, quod genus of which sort invenias you may find et also nomina plura more names locorum of places.

Hæc neutra these nouns neuter pluralia of the plural number leguntur are read rariùs seldom primo in the singular; mœnia the walls of a city, cum with tesquis rough and desert places, præcordia the midriff of the body, lustra the dens ferarum of wild beasts, arma arms, mapalia Numidiancottages, sic so bellaria junkets, munia an office or charge, castra a camp; funus a funeral petit requires justa solemnities, et and virgo a virgin petit requires sponsalia espousals; disertus an eloquent man amat loves rostra the pulpit, que and pueri children gestant carry crepundia rattles, que and infantes infants colunt cunabula lie in cradles; angur a soothsayer consulit consults exta the entrails, et and absolvens finishing his sacrifice superis to the gods above recantat chants over effata their decrees; festa the feasts deùm of the gods, ceu as, Bacchanalia feasts dedicated to Bacchus, poterunt will be proper jungi to be joined. Quòd si and if leges you shall read plura more, licet reponas you may place them quoque also hæc classe in this rank.

HÆC these nouns sunt are simul also et both quarti of the fourthatque and secundi flexûs the second declension; enim for laurus a bay-tree facit makes genitivo in the genitive case lauri et and laurûs, sic so quercus an oak, pinus a pine-tree, ficus, pro for fructu a fig, ac and arbore the tree, sic also colus a distaff, atque and penus all kinds of victuals, cornus, quando when habetur it signifies arbor a tree, sic so lacus a lake, atque and domus a house: licèt although hæc these nec recurrant are not found ubique in every case. Leges you will read quoque also plura more his than these, quæ which jure relinquant you may well leave priacis to the ancients.

AS IN PRÆSENTI, &c.

OR, THE

RULES FOR VERBS

CONSTRUED.

AS in præsentī a verb making as in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense in avi : Ut as, no nas to swim navi, vocito vocitas to call often vocitavi. Deme *except* lavo to wash lavi, juvo to help juvi, que and nexo to knit nexui, et and seco to cut, quod which makes secui, neco to kill, quod which makes necui; verbum the verb mico to glitter, quod which makes micui, plico to fold, quod which makes plicui, frico to rub, quod which dat makes fricui; sic so domo to tame, quod which makes domui, tono to thunder, quod which makes tonui; verbum the verb sono to sound, quod which makes sonui; crepo to crack, quod which makes crepui, veto to forbid, quod which dat makes vetui, atque and cubo to lie along cubui; hæc these verbs raro formantur are seldom formed in avi. Do das to give vult will formare form ritè by custom dedi, sto stas to stand steti.

ES in præsentī a verb making es in the present tense format forms perfectum the preterperfect tense dans ui by ui; ut as nigreo nigres to grow black nigrui: excipe *except* jubeo to bid jussi; sorbeo to sup up habet hath sorbui, quoque also sorpsi; mulceo to stroke gently mulsi; luceo to shine vult will have luxi, sedeo to sit sedi, que and video to see vult will have vidi; sed but prandeo to dine makes prandi, strideo to scream stridi, suadeo to advise suasi, rideo to laugh risi, et and ardeo to be on fire habet hath arsi.

Syllaba prima the first syllable his quatuor in these four verbs infra following geminatur is doubled: namque for
pendeo

pendeo *to hang down* vult *will have* pependi, que *and* mordeo *to bite* momordi, spondeo *to betroth* vult *will have* spopondi, que *and* tondeo *to clip or shear* totondi.

Si *if* l vel r, l or r, stet *stand* ante *before* geo, geo *vertitur is changed* in si *into* si : ut as urgeo *to urge* ursi ; mulgeo *to milk* dat *makes* mulsi, quoque *also* mulxi, frigeo *to be cold* frixi, lugeo *to mourn* luxi, et *and* augeo *to increase* habet *hath* auxi.

Fleo *fles to weep* dat *makes* flevi, leo *les to anoint* levi, que *and* indè *natum its compound* deleo *to wipe out* delevi, pleo *ples to fill* plevi, neo *to spin* nevi.

Mansi, formatur *is formed à from* maneo *to tarry* ; torqueo *to twist* vult *will have* torsi, hæreo *to stick* hæsi.

Veo, fit *is made* vi : ut as, ferveo *to be hot* fervi ; niveo *to wink or beckon*, et *and* indè *satum its compound* con-niveo *to wink* poscit *requires* nivi et *and* nixi : cieo *to stir up* civi, que *and* vieo *to bind* vievi.

TERTIA *the third conjugation* formabit *will form* præteritum *the preterperfect tense* ut as manifestum *is shown* hic *here*.

Bo, fit *is made* bi : ut as lambo *to lick* lambi : excipe *except* scribo *to write* scripsi, et *and* nubo *to be married* nupsi ; antiquum *the old verb* cumbo *to lie down* dat *maketh* cubui.

Co, fit *is made* ci : ut as vinco *to overcome* vici : parco *to spare* vult *will have* peperci et *and* parsi : dico *to say* dixi, quoque *also* duco *to lead* duxi.

Do, fit *is made* di : ut as mando *to eat* mandi : sed *but* scindo *to cut* dat *makes* scidi, findo *to cleave* fidi, fundo *to pour out* fudi ; que *and* tundo *to pound* tutudi, pendo *to weigh* pependi, tendo *to bend* tetendi, que *and* junge *join* cado *to fall*, quod *which* format *forms* cecidi, cædo *pro for* verbero *to beat* cecidi, cedo *pro for* discedere *to depart*, sive *or* locum dare *to give place* cessi : vado *to go*, rado *to shave*, lædo *to hurt*, ludo *to play*, divido *to divide*, trudo *to thrust*, claudio *to shut*, plaudo *to clap hands*, rodo *to gnaw*, ex *do from* do, semper faciunt *si always* si.

Go,

Go, fit is made xi ; ut as jungo to join junxi : sed but r the letter r ante before go, vult will have si ; ut as spargo to sprinkle sparsi ; lego to read legi, et and ago to act facit makes egi ; tango to touch dat makes tetigi, pungo to prick punxi, que and pupugi : frango to break dat makes fregi, pago for paciscor to covenant vult will have pepigi ; etiam also pango to fasten pegi, sed but usus custom maluit had rather form panxi.

Ho, fit is made xi : ceu as traho to draw traxi docet shows, et and veho to carry vexi.

Lo, fit is made ui : ceu as colo to till colui : excipe except psallo to play upon an instrument cum p with p, et and sallo to season with salt sine p without p, nam for utrumque both tibi format make li ; vello to pluck dat makes velli, quoque also vulsi, fallo to deceive fefelli ; cello pro for frango to break ceculi, que and pello to drive away pepuli.

Mo, fit is made ui ; ceu as vomo to vomit vomui ; sed but emo to buy facit maketh emi : como to deck the hair petit requires compsi, promo to draw out prompsi ; adjice add demo to take away, quod which format forms dempsi, sumo to take sumpsi, premo to press pressi.

No, fit is made vi : ceu as sino to suffer sivi : excipe except temno to condemn tempsi ; sterno to strew dat makes stravi, sperno to despise spreui, lino to smear over levi, interdum sometimes lini et and livi, quoque also cerno to discern crevi : gigno to beget, pono to put, cano to sing, dant make genui, posui, cecini.

Po, fit is made psi : ut as scalpo to scratch scalpsi, excipe except rumpo to break rupi, et and strepo to make a noise, quod which format formeth strepui, crepo to crack, quod which dat makes crepui.

Quo, fit is make qui : ut as linquo to leave liqui ; demito except coquo to cook or dress meat coxi.

Ro, fit is made vi : ceu as sero pro for planto to plant, et and semino to sow sevi, quod which signans signifying ordino to set in order dabit will make semper always melius rather serui ; verro to brush vult will have verriet and versi ; uro to burn ussi, gero to bear gessi, quæro to seek quæsivi, tero to beat or bruise trivi, curro to run cucurri.

So,

So, *formabit will form sivi, veluti as arcesso to send for, incesso to attack, atque and lcesso to provoke probat shows: sed but tolle except capesso to take in hand, quod which facit makes capessi, que and capessivi; atque and facesso to dispatch facessi, et also viso to go to see visi; sed but pinso to pound or grind habebit will have pinsui.*

Sco, *fit is made vi: ut as pasco to feed cattle pavi: posco to require vult will have poposci, disco to learn vult will formare form didici, quinisco to nod the head quexi.*

To, *fit is made ti: ut as verto to turn verti: sed but activum sisto let this verb active sisto, pro for facio stare to make, to stand notetur be marked, nam for dat it makes jure by right stiti; mitto to send dat giveth misi, peto to ask vult will formare form petivi, sterto to snore habet hath stertui, meto to mow messui. Exi, fit is made ab from ecto: ut as flecto to bend flexi; necto to knit dat makes nexui, habetque and also has nexi; etiam also pecto to comb dat makes pexui, habet it hath quoque also pexi.*

Vo, *fit is made vi: ut as volvo to roll volvi: excipe except vivo to live vixi.*

Xo, *fit is made ui: ut as texo to weave, quod which habebit will have texui, monstrat showeth.*

Cio, *fit is made ci: ut as facio to do feci; quoque also jacio to cast jeci: antiquum the old verb lacio to allure lexi, quoque also specio to behold spexi.*

Dio, *fit is made di: ut as fodio to dig fodi.*

Gio, *fit is made gi: ceu as fugio to fly fugi.*

Pio, *fit is made pi: ut as capio to take cepi: excipe except cupio to desire cupivi, et and rapio to snatch rapui, sapio to savour or taste sapui, atque and sapivi.*

Rio, *fit is made ri: ut as pario to bring forth young peperui.*

Tio *makes ssi, geminans s doubling the letter s: ut as quatuo to shake quassi, quod which vix reperitur is scarce found in usu in use.*

Denique finally Uo, *fit is made ui: ut as statuo to erect statui; pluo to rain format formeth pluvi, sive or pluvi, sed but struo to build makes struxi, fluo to flow fluxi.*

QUARTA *the fourth conjugation dat is makes is in the present tense, ivi in the preterperfect: ut as scio acis to know scivi, monstrat tibi shows you. Excipias except venio to come dans making veni, et and veneo to be sold venii, raucio to be hoarse rausi, farcio to stuff farsii, sarcio to patch sarsii, sepio to hedge sepsii, sentio to perceive sensi, fulcio to prop fulsi, item also haurio to draw hausi, sancio to establish sanxi, vincio to bind vinxi, salio pro for salto to leap salui, et and amicio to clothe dat giveth amicitui.*

SIMPLEX *the simple verb et and compositivum its compound dat makes idem præteritum the same preterperfect tense: ut as docui I have taught, edocui I have taught perfectly monstrat showeth. Sed but syllaba the syllable quam which simplex the simple verb semper always geminat doubles non geminatur is not doubled composito in the compound: præterquam except his tribus in these three, præcurro to run before, excurro to run out, repungo to prick again, atque and ritè creatis in verbs rightly compounded à of do to give, disco to learn, sto to stand, posco to require.*

Compositum the compound verb à of plico to fold, cum with sub, vel or nomine a noun, ut as ista these, supplico to beseech, multiplico to multiply, gaudet will formare form plicavi; applico to apply, complico to fold up, replico to fold back, or lay open, et and explico to unfold, formant make quoque also ui.

Quamvis although simplex the simple verb oleo to smell vult will have olui, tamen yet quodvis compositum every compound verb indè thereof formabit will form melius rather olevi; at but redolet to cast a scent sequitur follows formam the form simplicis of the simple verb, que and subolet to smell a little.

Omnia composita all the compound verbs à of pungo to prick formabunt will form punxi; unum one repungo to prick again vult will have pupugi, interdumque and sometimes repunxi.

Natum the compound à of do to give, quando when est it is inflexio tertia the third conjugation, ut as addo to add,

add, credo to believe, edo to set forth, dedo to yield up, reddo to restore, perdo to lose, abdo to put away, vel or obdo to set against, condo to build, indo to put in, trado to deliver, prodo to betray, vendo to sell, make didi; at but unum one abscondo to hide, makes abscondi. Natum a compound à of sto stas to stand habebit will have stiti.

VERBA hæc simplicia *these simple verbs*, si *if* componantur *they are compounded*, mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* præsentis *of the present tense* que *and* præteriti *of the preterperfect tense*, in e into e: damno *to condemn*, lacto *to suckle*, sacro *to dedicate*, fallo *to deceive*, arceo *to drive away*, tracto *to handle*, fatiscor *to be weary*, cando *to burn*, vetus *an old word*, capto *to lie in wait*, jacto *to throw*, patior *to suffer*, que *and* gradior *to step*, partio *to divide*, carpo *to crop*, patro *to achieve or finish*, scando *to climb*, spargo *to sprinkle*, que *and* pario *to bring forth young*, cujus duo nata *whose two compounds* comperit *to know for certain*, et *and* reperit *to find* dant *make the preterperfect tense* per i in i; sed *but* cætera *the rest* per ui in ui; velut *as* hæc *these*, aperire *to open*, operire *to cover*.

Hæc duo compôsta *let these two compounds à of* pasco pavi *to feed cattle*, compesco *to pasture together*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, notentur *be observed* habere *to make tantum only* pescui; cætera *the rest*, ut *as*, epasco *to eat up*, servabunt *will keep* usum *the use* simplicis *of the simple verb*.

HÆC *these verbs*, habeo *to have*, lateo *to lie hid*, salio *to leap*, statuo *to erect*, cado *to fall*, lædo *to hurt*, et *and* tango *to touch*, atque *and* cano *to sing*, sic *so* quero *to seek*, cædo cecidi *to beat*, sic *also* egeo *to want*, teneo *to hold fast*, taceo *to hold one's peace*, sapio *to savour*, que *and* rapio *to snatch*, si *if* componantur *they are compounded*, mutant *change* vocalem primam *the first vowel* in i into i: ut *as*, rapio *to snatch* rapui, eripio *to take away by force* eripui: natum *a compound à of* cano *to sing* dat *makes præteritum the preterperfect tense* per ui in ui, ceu *as*, concino *to sing in concert* concinui.

Sic

Sic also displiceo to *displease* à of placeo to *please* : sed but hæc duo these two compounds, complaceo to *please* cum with perplaceo to *please very much*, bene servant always keep usum the use simplicis of the simple verb :

Composita the compounds à of verbis the verbs calco to *tread*, salto to *leap or dance*, mutant *change* a per u a into u ; conculco to *tread upon*, inculco to *tread in*, resulto to *rebound*, demonstrant show id that tibi to *you*.

Composita the compounds à of claudio to *shut*, quatio to *shake*, lavo to *wash*, rejiciunt a *cast away* a : occludo to *shut against*, excludo to *shut out*, à from claudio to *shut*, docet teaches id this : que and percutio to *strike*, excutio to *strike out*, à from quatio to *strike* : à from lavo to *wash*, nata the compounds proluo to *drench*, diluo to *wash out* :

SI if componas you compound hæc these verbs, ago to *act*, emo to *buy*, sedeo to *sit*, rego to *rule*, frango to *break*, et and capio to *take*, jacio to *cast*, lacio to *allure*, specio to *behold*, premo to *press*, pango to *fasten*, sibi mutant they change vocalem primam the first vowel præsentis of the present tense in i intc i, nunquam never præteriti of the preterperfect tense : ceu as of frango to *break*, refringo to *break open*, makes refrégi ; incipio to *begin* incepti, à of capio to *take* : sed but pauca let a few notentur be marked, namque for perago to *finish* sequitur follows suum simplex its simple verb, que and satago to be busy : atque and dego to *live ab from ago to act*, dat makes degi, cogo to *bring together* coëgi, sic so à from rego to *rule*, pergo to *go forward*, makes perrexi ; quoque and surgo to *rise* vult will have surrexi, mediâ syllabâ the middle syllable præsentis of the present tense ademptâ being taken away.

Ista quatuor composita these four compound verbs, à of pango to *fix or fasten* retinent a keep a, depango to *fix in the ground*, oppango to *fasten against*, circumpango to *fasten about*, atque and repango to *fasten again*.

Facio to *do* variat changeth nil nothing, nisi unless præpositio præeunte a preposition goes before ; olfacio to *smell out* docet teaches id that, cum with calfacio to *make hot*, que and inficio to *infect*.

Nata the compounds à of lego to read, re, per, præ, sub, trans, ad, præeunte going before, servant keep vocalem the vowel præsentis of the present tense : cætera the rest mutant change it in i into i ; de quibus of which hæc these tantum only, intelligo to understand, diligo to love, negligo to neglect, faciunt make præteritum their preterperfect tense lexi ; reliqua omnia all the rest legi.

NUNC now discas you may learn formare to form supinum the supine ex præterito from the preterperfect tense.

Bi, sumit takes sibi to itself tum ; namque for sic so bibi to drink fit makes bibitum.

Ci, fit is made ctum : ut as vici to overcome victum testatur shows, et and ici to smite dans making ictum, feci to do factum, quoque also jeci to cast jactum.

Di, fit is made sum : ut as vidi to see visum : quædam some geminant s double s ; ut as pandi to open passum, sedi to sit sessum, adde add scidi to cut quod which dat makes scissum, atque and fidi to cleave fissum, quoque also fodi to dig fossum.

Hic here etiam also advertas you may mark, quod that syllaba prima the first syllable, quam which præteritum the preterperfect tense vult geminari will have doubled, non geminatur is not doubled supinis in the supines, idque and this totondi to clip or shear dans making tonsum, docet shows, atque and cecidi to beat, quod which maketh cæsum, et and cecidi to fall, quod which dat maketh casum, atque and tetendi to bend, quod which maketh tensum et also tentum, tutudi to beat or pound tunsum, atque and dedi to give quod which jure by right poscit requires datum ; atque and momordi to bite vult will have morsum.

Gi, fit is made ctum : ut as legi to read lectum ; pegi to fasten que and pepigi to covenant dant make pactum, fregi to break fractum, quoque also tetigi to touch tactum, egi to act actum, pupugi to prick punctum ; fugi to flee dat makes fugitum.

Li, fit is made sum : ut as salli, stans standing pro for sale condio to season with salt, makes salsum ; pepuli

puli to drive away dat makes pulsum, ceculi to break culsum, atque and fefelli to deceive falsum ; velli to pluck dat makes vulsum, quoque also tuli to bear habet hath latum.

Mi, ni, pi, qui, formant form tum, velut as manifestum is manifest hic here. Emi to buy emptum, veni to come ventum, cecini à from cano to sing cantum, cepi à from capio to take captum, quoque also coepi to begin cœptum, rupi à from rumpo to break ruptum ; quoque also liqui to leave lictum.

Ri, fit is made sum : ut as verri to brush versum ; excipe except peperi to bring forth young partum.

Si, fit is made sum : ut as visi to go to see visum ; tamen but misi to send formabit will form missum, s geminato s being doubled ; excipe except fulsi to prop ful- tum, hausi to draw haustum, sarsi to patch sartum, quoque also farsi to stuff fartum, ussi to burn ustum, gessi to bear gestum ; torsi to wreath requirit hath duo two supines tortum et and torsum, indulsi to indulge indul- tum que and indulsum.

Psi, fit is made ptum : ut as scripsi to write scriptum : quoque also sculpsi to engrave sculptum.

Ti, fit is made tum ; namque for steti à from sto to stand, que and stiti à from sisto to make to stand, ambo both ritè by right dant make statum : tamen but excipe except verti to turn versum.

Vi, fit is made tum : ut as flavi to blow flatum : excipe except pavi to feed cattle pastum ; lavi to wash dat makes lotum, interdum sometimes lautum atque and lavatum ; potavi to drink facit makes potum, interdum sometimes et also potatum ; sed but favi to favour makes fautum, cavi to beware cautum ; à from sero sevi to sow ritè formes you may rightly form satum, livi que and lini to besmear dant make litum ; solvi à from solvo to loose so- lutum, volvi à from volvo to roll volutum ; singultivi to sob vult will have singultum, veneo venis venivi to be sold venum, sepelivi to bury ritè by right sepultum.

Quod a verb that dat makes ui, dat makes itum : ut as domui to tame domitum ; excipe except quodvis verbum every

every verb in *uo*, quia *because* semper formabit *it will always form* *ui* in *utum* *ui* in *utum* : ut *as* *exui* to *put off* *exutum* ; *deme* *except* *ru* à *from* *ruo* to *rush* dans *making* *ruitum* ; *seui* to *cut* *vult* *will have* *sectum*, *necui* to *slay* *nectum*, que *and* *fricui* to *rub* *frictum*, item *also* *miscui* to *minge* *mistum*, et *and* *amicui* to *clothe* *dat* *makes* *amictum* ; *torrui* to *roast* *habet* *hath* *tostum*, *docui* to *teach* *doctum*, que *and* *tenui* to *hold* *tentum*, *consului* to *consult* *consultum*, *alui* to *feed* *altum* que *and* *alitur* : sic *so* *salui* to *leap* *saltum*, *colui* to *till* quoque *also* *occului* to *hide* *cultum* ; *pinsui* to *pound* or *grind* *habet* *hath* *pistum*, *rapui* to *snatch* *raptum*, que *and* *serui* à *from* *sero* to *set in order* *vult* *will have* *sertum*, sic *so* quoque *also* *texui* to *weave* *habet* *hath* *textum*.

Sed *but* hæc *these* *verbs* mutant *change* *ui* in *sum* *ui* into *sum* : nam *for* *censeo* to *judge* *habet* *hath* *censum*, *cellui* to *break* *celsum*, *meto* *messui* to *reap* *habet* *hath* quoque *also* *messum* : item *also* *nexui* to *knit* *nexum*, sic *so* quoque *also* *pexui* to *comb* *habet* *hath* *pexum*.

Xi, fit *is made* *ctum* : ut *as* *vinxi* to *bind* *vinctum* : quinque *five* *abjiciunt* *n* *cast away* *n* ; ut *as* *finxi* to *form* or *fashion* *fictum*, *minxi* to *make* *water* *mictum* ; *adjice* *add* *pinxi* to *paint* dans *giving* *pictum*, *strinxi* to *bind* *fast* *strictum*, quoque *also* *rinxi* to *grin* *riatum*.

Flexi to *bend*, *plexi* to *twist*, *fixi* to *fasten*, *dant* *make* *xum* ; et *and* *fluo* to *flow* *fluxum*.

QUODQUE compositum supinum *every* *compound supine* formatur *is formed* ut *as* *simplex* *the simple* *supine*, quamvis *although* *eadem* *syllaba* *the same* *syllable* non stet *does not continue* semper *always* *utrique* to *them both*. *Composita* *the compounds* à *of* *tunsum* to *pound*, *n* *demptâ* *by taking away* *n*, *make* *tusum* ; à *of* *ruitum* to *rush*, *i* *mediâ* *the middle letter* *i* *demptâ* *being taken away*, fit *is made* *rutum* ; et *and* quoque *also* à *of* *saltum* to *leap* *sultum*. *Compôsta* *the compounds* à *of* *sero* to *sow* quando *when* *format* *it forms* *satum*, *dant* *make* *situm*.

Hæc *these* *supines* *captum* to *take*, *factum* to *do*, *jactum* to *cast*, *raptum* to *snatch*, mutant *a* per *e* *change* *a* into *e* ; et *and* *cantum* to *sing*, *partum* to *bring forth* *young*,

young, sparsum to sprinkle, carptum to crop, quoque also fartum to stuff.

Verbum *the verb* edo *to eat* compositum *being compounded* non facit *maketh not* estum, sed *but* esum; unum *one* duntaxat *only* comedo *to eat up* formabit *will form* utrumque *both*.

A *from* nosco *to know* duo *these two* compounds tantum *only* cognitum *to know* et *and* agnium *to know again* habentur *are found*; cætera *the rest* dant *make* notum: noscitur, jam *now* est *is* nullo in usu *not in use*.

VERBA in or *verbs ending in* or admittunt *take* præteritum *their preterperfect tense* ex posteriore supino *from the latter supine*, u verso u *being turned* per us *into* us, et *and* sum vel fui consociato *being added*; ut as à oflectu *to be read* lectus sum vel or fui *I have been read*. At *but* horum *of these verbs* nunc *sometimes* est *there is* deponens *a deponent*, nunc *sometimes* est *there is* commune *a common* notandum *to be noted*.

Nam *for* labor *to slide* dat *makes* lapsus; patior *to suffer* passus, et *and* ejus nata *its compounds*; ut as compatior *to suffer together* compassus, que *and* perpetior *to endure* formans *forming* perpassus; fateor *to own* dat *makes* fassus, et *and* indè nata *its compounds*, ut as confiteor *to confess* confessus, que *and* diffiteor *to deny* formans *forming* diffessus: gradior *to step* dat *makes* gressus, et *and* indè nata *its compounds*; ut as digredior *to step aside* digressus; junge *add* fatiscor *to be weary* fessus sum, metior *to measure* mensus sum, et *and* utor *to use* usus.

Ordior *pro for* texo *to weave* dat *makes* orditus, pro *for* incepto *to begin* orsus, nitor *to strive* nisus vel or nixus sum, et *and* ulciscor *to revenge* ultus, simul *also* irascor *to be angry* iratus, atque *and* reor *to suppose* ratus sum, obliviscor *to forget* vult *will have* oblitus sum, fruor *to enjoy* optat *chooseth* fructus vel or fruitus, junge *add* misereri *to have pity* misertus.

Tuor *to see* et *and* tueor *to defend* non vult *will not have* tutus, sed *but* tuitus sum; adde *add* locutus à of loquor *to speak*, et *and* adde *add* secutus à of sequor *to follow*.
Exterior

Exterior *to try* facit *maketh* expertus ; paciscor *to make a bargain* gaudet *will* formare *form* pactus sum, nanciscor *to get* nactus, apiscor *to obtain* quod *which* est *is* vetus verbum *an old verb* aptus sum, unde *from* whence adipiscor *to get* adeptus.

Junge *add* queror *to complain* questus, junge *add* proficiscor *to go* profectus, expergiscor *to awake* experectus sum ; et *and* quoque *also* hæc *these*, comminiscor *to devise* commentus, nascor *to be born* natus, que *and* morior *to die* mortuus, atque *and* orior *to rise*, quod *which* facit *makes* præteritum *its* præterperfect tense ortus.

HÆC *these* verbs habent *have* præteritum *a* præterperfect tense activæ *of the active* et *and* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* : cœno *to sup* format tibi *formeth* you cœnavi et *and* cœnatus sum, juro *to swear* juravi et *and* juratus, que *and* poto *to drink* potavi et *and* potus, titubo *to stumble* titubavi vel or titubatus.

Prandeo *to dine* prandi et *and* pransus sum ; placeo *to please* dat *makes* placui et *and* placitus, suesco *to accustom* vult *will* have suevi atque *and* suetus.

Nubo *to be married* nupsi que *and* nupta sum, mereor *to deserve* meritus sum vel or merui ; adde *add*, libet *it pleaseth*, libuit libitum, et *and* adde *add*, licet *it is lawful*, quod *which* dat *makes* licuit licitum ; tædet *it wearieeth*, quod *which* dat *makes* tædui et *and* pertæsum ; adde *add* pudet *it shameth* faciens *making* pudit que *and* puditum, atque *and* piget *it grieveth* quod *which* tibi format *forms* you piguit que *and* pigitum.

NEUTRO-PASSIVUM *a neuter-passive verb* format tibi *forms* you præteritum *its* præterperfect tense sic *thus* ; gaudeo *to be glad* gavisus sum, fido *to trust* fisus, et *and* audeo *to dare* ausus sum, fio *to be made* factus, soleo *to be wont* solitus sum.

FUGIUNT *these verbs want* præteritum *the* præterperfect tense, vergo *to bend*, ambigo *to doubt*, glisco *to spread*, fatisco *to chink*, polleo *to be powerful*, nideo *to shine* : ad hæc *add* *to these* inceptiva verbs *inceptive* ; ut *as*, puerasco *to grow towards* childhood ; et *and* passiva verbs

verbs passive, quibus activa *whose actives* caruere *want* supinis *their supines*; ut *as*, metuor *to be feared*, timeor *to be feared*: *meditativa omnia all meditatives* præter besides parturio *to be in labour*, esurio *to be hungry*, quæ duo *which two* servant keep præteritum *their preterperfect tense*.

HÆC verba *these verbs* raro *seldom* aut *or* nunquam *never* retinebunt *will have* supinum *their supine*; lambo *to lick*, mico micui *to glitter*, rudo *to bray as an ass*, scabo *to claw*, parco peperci *to spare*, dispesco *to drive from pasture*, posco *to require*, disco *to learn*, compesco *to restrain*, quinisco *to nod the head*, dego *to live*, angō *to throttle*, sugo *to suck*, lingo *to lick*, ningo *to snow*, que and satago *to be busy*, psallo *to play on an instrument*, volo *to be willing*, nolo *to be unwilling*, malo *to be more willing*, tremo *to tremble*, strideo strido *to scream*, flaveo *to be yellow*, liveo *to be black and blue*, avet *to covet*, paveo *to dread*, conniveo *to wink*, fervet *to be hot*.

Compositum *a compound* à of nuo *to nod*; ut, *as*, renuo *to refuse*: à of cado *to fall*; ut *as*, accido *to fall upon*, præter except occido *to fall down*, quod *which* facit *makes* occasum, que and recido *to fall back* recasum: respuo *to refuse*, linquo *to leave*, luo *to pay*, metuo *to fear*, cluo *to shine or to be famous*, frigeo *to be cold*, calveo *to be bald*, et and sterto *to snore*, timeo *to fear*: sic so luceo *to shine*, et and arceo *to drive away*, cufus composita *whose compounds* habent *have* erciturum; sic so nata *the compounds* à of gruo *to cry like a crane*, ut *as*, ingruo *to invade*, et quæcunque neutra *whatever neuters* secundæ *of the second conjugation* formantur *are formed* in ui: excipias *you may except*, oleo *to smell*, doleo *to be in pain*, placeo *to please*, que and taceo *to hold one's peace*, pareo *to obey*, item also careo *to want*, noceo *to hurt*, jaceo *to lie down*, que and lateo *to lie hid*, et also valeo *to be in health*, caleo *to be hot*; namque *for hæc these verbs* gaudent supino *have their supines*.

SYNTAXIS.

CONSTRUED.

VERBUM personale *a verb personal* concordat *agrees* cum nominativo *with its nominative case* numero *in number* et *and* personâ *person*: ut *as*, Via *the way* ad bonos mores *to good manners* est *is* nunquam *never* sera *too late*.

Nominativus *the nominative case* pronominum *of pronouns* rarè exprimitur *is seldom expressed* nisi *unless* gratiâ *for the sake* distinctionis *of distinction*, aut *or* emphasis *energy of expression*: ut *as*, Vos *ye* damnâstis *have condemned me*: quasi *as though* dicat *he should say*, præterea nemo *no one else*. Tu *thou* es *art* patronus *our patron*, tu *you* parens *our father*, si *if* tu deseris *you forsake us*, periimus *we are undone*: quasi *as though* dicat *he should say*, tu *you* es *are* patronus *our patron* præcipuè *in a particular manner*, et *and* præ aliis *beyond all others*. Fertur *he is reported* designâsse *to have committed* atrocia flagitia *horrid crimes*.

Aliquando *sometimes* oratio *a sentence* est *is* nominativus *the nominative case* verbo *to a verb*: ut *as*, Didicisse *to have learnt* ingenuas artes *the liberal sciences* fideliter *thoroughly* emollit *softens much* mores *men's manners*, nec sinit *and suffers them not* esse *to be* ferus *brutal*.

Aliquando *sometimes* adverbium *an adverb* cum *with* genitivo *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Partim virorum *part of the men* ceciderunt *were slain* in bello *in the war*.

VERBA verbs infinitivi *modi of the infinitive mood* frequenter *often* statuunt *set* ante se *before them* accusativum *an accusative case* pro *instead of* nominativo *a nominative*, conjunctione *the conjunction* quòd, vel *or* ut *that* omissâ *being left out*; ut *as*, Gaudeo *I am glad* te rediisse *that you are returned* incolumem *safe*.

Verbum *a verb* positum *placed* inter *between* duos nominativos *two nominative cases* diversorum numerorum *of*

of different numbers potest may concordare agree cum with alterutro either of them: ut as, Iræ the quarrels amantium of lovers est is integratio the renewing amoris of love. Pectus her breast quoque also fiunt becomes robora oak.

Nomen a noun multitudinis of multitude singulare of the singular number quandoque sometimes jungitur is joined verbo plurali to a verb plural: ut as, Pars part of them abiere are gone. Uterque both luduntur are deceived dolis with tricks.

Impersonalia verbs impersonal non habent have not nominativum a nominative case præcedentem going before them: ut as, Tædet me I am weary vitæ of my life. Pertæsum est I am quite sick conjugii of wedlock.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives, participia participles, et and pronomina pronouns concordant agree cum with substantivo the substantive genere in gender, numero in number, et and casu in case: ut as, Rara avis an uncommon bird in terris in the world, que and simillima very much like nigro cygno a black swan.*

Aliquando sometimes oratio a sentence supplet supplies locum the place substantivi of a substantive, adjectivo the adjective posito being put in neutro genere in the neuter gender: ut as, Audito it being heard regem that the king proficisci was set out Doroberniam for Dover.

RELATIVUM *a relative concordat agrees cum with antecedente its antecedent genere in gender, numero number, et and personâ person: ut as, Quis who est is vir bonus a good man? Qui he who servat keeps consulta the decrees patrum of the senators, qui he who keeps leges the laws juraque and ordinances.*

Aliquando sometimes oratio a sentence ponitur is put pro for antecedente the antecedent: ut as, Veni I came ad eam to her in tempore in season, quod which est is rerum omnium primum the main business of all.

Relativum a relative collocatum placed inter between duo substantiva two substantives diversorum generum of different genders et and numerorum numbers concordat.

agrees interdum *sometimes* cum *with* posteriore *the latter substantive*: ut *as*, Homines *men* tuentur *regard* illum *globe* *that globe* quæ *which* dicitur *is called* terra *the earth*.

Aliquando *sometimes* relativum *a relative* concordat *agrees* cum *with* primitivo *the primitive*, quod *which* subauditur *is understood* in possessivo *in the possessive*: ut *as*, Omnes *all men* dicere *said* omnia *bona* *all hopeful things*, et *and* laudare *extolled* meas *fortunas* *my fortune* qui haberem *who had* gnatum *a son* præditum *endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition*.

Si *if* nominativus *a nominative case* interponatur *is put between* relativo *the relative* et *and* verbo *the verb*, relativum *the relative* regitur *is governed* à verbo *by the verb*, aut *or* ab aliâ dictione *by some other word* quæ *which* locatur *is placed* in oratione *in the sentence* cum verbo *with the verb*: ut *as*, Gratia *thanks* abest *are lost* ab officio *in a kindness* quod *which* mora *delay* tardat *keeps back*. Cujus *numen* *whose deity* adoro *I adore*.

QUUM *when* duo substantiva *two substantives* diversæ significationis *of a different signification* concurrunt *meet together*, posterius *the latter* ponitur *is put* in genitivo *in the genitive case*: ut *as*, Amor *the love* nummi *of money* crescit *increases* quantum *as much as* ipsa pecunia *the money itself* crescit *increases*.

Hic genitivus *this genitive case* aliquando *sometimes* vertitur *is changed* in dativum *into the dative*: ut *as*, Est *he is* pater *the father* urbi *of the city* que *and* maritus *the husband* urbi *of the city*.

Adjectivum *an adjective* in neutro genere *of the neuter gender* positum *put* sine substantivo *without a substantive*, postulat *requires* aliquando *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut *as*, Paululum pecuniæ *a very little money*.

Interdum *sometimes* genitivus *a genitive case* ponitur tantum *is set alone*, priore substantivo *the former substantive* subaudito *being understood* per ellipsin *by the figure ellipsis*: ut *as*, Ubi *when* veneris *you are come* ad Dianæ

Dianæ to Diana's, ito turn ad dextram to the right hand: subaudi understand templum the word temple.

Duos substantiva two substantives ejusdem rei respecting the same thing ponuntur are put in eodem casu in the same case: ut as, Opes riches irritamenta malorum the incentives of vice effodiuntur are dug out of the earth.

Laus the praise, vituperium the dispraise, vel or qualitas the quality rei of a thing ponitur is put in ablativo in the ablative case, etiam also genitivo the genitive: ut as, Puer a boy ingenui vultûs of an ingenuous aspect, que and ingenui pudoris ingenuous modesty. Vir a man nullâ fide of no integrity.

Opus need et and usus need exigunt require ablativum an ablative case: ut as, Opus est nobis we have need of auctoritate tuâ your authority. Non accepit he would not receive pecuniam money ab iis from them quâ of which sibi esset he had nihil usus no need.

Autem but opus videtur seems quandoque sometimes poni to be put adjectivè adjectively pro for necessarius necessary: ut as, Dux a leader et and auctor an adviser est is opus necessary nobis for us.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives quæ which significant signify desiderium desire, notitiam knowledge, memoriam memory, timorem fear; atque and contraria the contraries, iis to these, exigunt require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Natura the nature hominum of men est is avida fond novitatis of novelty. Mens a mind præscia foreknowing futuri what is to come. Esto be thou memor mindful brevis ævi of the shortness of life. Immemor unmindful beneficii of a kindness. Imperitus rerum unacquainted with the world. Rudis belli ignorant of war. Timidus deorum fearing the gods. Impavidus sui fearless of himself. Cum plurimis aliis with many other adjectives quæ which denotant declare affectionem a passion animi of the mind.*

Adjectiva verbalia adjectives derived from verbs in ax ending in ax etiam also exigunt require genitivum a genitive

nitive case: ut *as*, Audax ingenii *bold by nature*. Tempus time edax *is the consumer rerum of all things*.

Nomina partitiva *nouns partitive*, numeralia *nouns of number*, comparativa *nouns comparative* et *and* superlativa *superlatives*, et *also* quædam adjectiva *some adjectives* posita *put* partitivè *partitively* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case* à quo *from which* et *also* mutantur *they take* genus *their gender*: ut *as*, Accipe *take* utrum horum *which of these two* mavis *you had rather*. Romulus, fuit *was* primus *the first* Romanorum regum *of the Roman kings*. Dextra *the right* est *is* fortior *the stronger* manuum *of the hands*. Medius *the middle* est *is* longissimus *the longest* digitorum *of the fingers*. Sancte deorum *O sacred deity*, sequimur *we follow* te *you*.

Autem *but* usurpantur *they are used* et *also* cum *with* his præpositionibus *these prepositions* à, ab, de, è, ex, inter, ante: ut *as*, Tertius *the third* ab Æneâ *from Æneas*. Solus *the only one* de superis *of the gods above*. Alter *one* è vobis *of you* es *is* deus *a god*. Primus *first* inter *among* omnes *all*. Primus *the first* ante *before* omnes *all*.

Secundus, aliquando *sometimes* exigit *requires* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Secundus *inferior* haud ulli *to none* veterum *of the ancients* virtute *in* valour.

Interrogativum *an interrogative* et *and* ejus redditivum *the word which answers it* erunt *shall be* ejusdem casûs *of the same case* et *and* temporis *tense*, nisi *except* voces *words* variæ constructionis *of a different construction* adhibeantur *be made use of*: ut *as*, Quarum rerum *of what things* est *is* there nulla sâtietas *no fulness*? Divitiarum *of riches*. Ne *whether* accusas *do you accuse* me furti *of theft*, an *or* homicidii *of murder*? Utroque *of both*.

ADJECTIVA *adjectives* quibus *whereby* commodum *advantage*, incommodum *disadvantage*, similitudo *likeness*, dissimilitudo *unlikeness*, voluptas *pleasure*, submissio *submission*, aut *or* relatio *relation* ad aliquid *to any*

any thing significatur is signified, postulant require dative a dative case: ut as, Si if facis you take care ut that sit he be idoneus serviceable patriæ to his country, utilis useful agris to the lands. Turba a multitude gravis troublesome paci to peace que and inimica averse placidæ quieti to gentle ease. Similis like patri his father. Color the colour qui which erat was albus white est is nunc now contrarius contrary albo to white. Jucundus pleasant amicis to his friends. Supplex submissive omnibus to all. Poëta a poet est is finitimus very near akin oratori to an orator.

Huc hither referuntur are referred nomina nouns composita compounded ex præpositione con of the preposition con: ut as, Contubernalis a comrade, commilito a fellow-soldier, conservus a fellow-servant, cognatus a kinsman by birth, &c.

Quædam some ex his of these adjectives quæ which significant signify similitudinem likeness, junguntur are joined etiam also genitivo to a genitive case: ut as, Quem he whom metuis you fear erat was par like hujus this man. Es you are similis like domini your master.

Communis common, alienus strange, immunis free, junguntur are joined genitivo to a genitive case, dativo to a dative; et also ablativo to an ablative cum præpositione with a preposition: ut as, Est it is commune common animantium omnium to all living creatures. Mors death communis est is common omnibus to all. Hoc this est is commune common mihi tecum to me and you. Non aliena not unfit for consilii the design. Alienus ambitioni an enemy to ambition. Non alienus not averse à studiis to the studies Scævola of Scævola. Dabitur it shall be granted vobis to you esse to be immunibus free from hujus mali this calamity. Caprificus the wild fig-tree est is immunis free omnibus to them all. Sumus we are immunes free ab illis malis from those evils.

Natus born, commodus convenient, incommodus inconvenient, utilis useful, inutilis useless, vehemens earnest, aptus fit, cum multis aliis with many others, jun-
guntur

guntur are joined interdum sometimes etiam also accusativo to an accusative case cum with præpositione a preposition: ut as, Natus born ad gloriam for glory. Utilis profitable ad eam rem to that business.

Verbalia adjectives derived from verbs in bilis ending in bilis accepta taken passivè passively, et also participialia participles made adjectives in dus ending in dus, postulant require dativum a dative case: ut as, Lucus iners a thick grove penetrabilis penetrable nulli astro by no star. O Juli, O Julius, memorande worthy to be mentioned mihi by me post after nullos sodales none of my acquaintance.

MENSURA the measure magnitudinis of quantity subijcitur is put after adjectivis adjectives in accusativo in the accusative case, ablativo the ablative, et and genitivo the genitive case: ut as, Turris a tower alta high centum pedes a hundred feet. Fons a fountain latus wide pedibus tribus three feet, altus deep triginta thirty. Area a floor lata broad pedum denum ten feet.

Accusativus an accusative case aliquando sometimes subijcitur is put after adjectivis adjectives et and participiis participles, ubi where præpositio secundum the preposition secundum videtur seems subintelligi to be understood: ut as, Similis like deo to a god os as to his countenance que and humeros his shoulders. Demissus cast down vultum as to his look.

ADJECTIVA adjectives quæ which pertinent relate ad copiam to plenty, ve or egestatem want, exigunt require interdum sometimes ablativum an ablative, interdum sometimes genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Dives rich equum in horses, dives rich picta vestis in embroidered garments, et auri and gold. Amor love est is foecundissimus very full of et both melle honey et and felle gall. Expers fraudis void of deceit. Beatus abounding gratiâ in favour.

Adjectiva adjectives et and substantiva substantives regunt govern ablativum an ablative case significantem signifying causam the cause, et and formam the form,
vel

vel or modum *the manner rei of a thing*: ut as, Pallidus *pale irā with anger*. Grammaticus *a grammarian nomine in name*, re *in reality barbarus a barbarian*. Cæsar, Trojanus *a Trojan origine by descent*.

Dignus *worthy*, indignus *unworthy*, præditus *endued*, captus *disabled*, contentus *content*, extorris *banished*, fretus *relying upon*, liber *free*, cum *with* adjectivis *adjectives* significantibus *signifying* pretium *price*, exigunt *require* ablativum *an ablative case*: ut as, Es *you are* dignus *worthy odio of hatred*. Qui haberem *I who had* gnatum *a son præditum endued* tali ingenio *with such a disposition*. Oculis capti *talpæ the blind moles fodere have dug* cubilia *their holes*. Abi *go your way* contentus *contented sorte tuâ with your lot*. Animus *a mind* liber *free from terrore fear*. Venale *to be purchased* gemmis *with jewels* nec nor auro *with gold*.

Nonnulla *some* horum *of these* admittunt *admit* inter-dum *sometimes* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut as, Indignus *unworthy of* magnorum avorum *my great ancestors*. Carmina *verses* digna *worthy of* deæ *a goddess*. Extorris *banished regni the kingdom*.

Comparativa *comparatives*, cum *when* exponantur *they may be explained* per *by* quàm *than*, admittunt *receive* ablativum *an ablative case*: ut as, Argentum *silver* est *is* vilius *of less value* auro *than gold*, aurum *gold* virtutibus *than virtue*: id est *that is*, quàm *than* aurum *gold*, quàm *than* virtutes *virtue*.

Tanto *by so much*, quanto *by how much*, hoc *by this*, eo *by this*, et *and* quo *by which*, cum *with* quibusdam *alii some others*, quæ *which* significant *signify* mensuram *the measure* excessûs *of exceeding*; item also ætate *by age*, et *and* natu *by birth*, junguntur *are joined* sæpe *often* comparativis *to comparatives* et *and* superlativis *to superlatives*: ut as, Tanto *by so much* pessimus *poëta he is the worst poet* omnium *of all*, quanto *by how much* tu *you are* optimus *patronus the best advocate* omnium *of all*. Quo plus habent *the more they have* eo plus cupiunt *the more they desire*. Major *ætate the elder*, et *and* maxi-
mus

mus ætate *the eldest*. Major natu et *and* maximus natu *have the same construction*.

MEI *of me*, tui *of thee or you*, sui *of himself*, nostri *of us*, vestri *of you*, genitivi *the genitive cases* primitivorum *of their primitives*, ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* persona *a person* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Languet *she languishes* desiderio tui *for want of you*. Que *and* pars *part* tui *of you* lateat *may lie* clausa *shut up* corpore meo *in my body*. Imago nostri *the picture of our person*.

Meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, vester *yours*, ponuntur *are used* cùm *when* actio *action* vel *or* possessio *the possession* rei *of a thing* significatur *is signified*: ut *as*, Favet *he favours* desiderio tuo *your desire*. Imago nostra *our picture*: id est, *that is*, quam *which* nos *we* possidemus *do possess*.

Hæc *possessiva these pronouns possessive*, meus *mine*, tuus *thine*, suus *his own*, noster *ours*, et *and* vester *yours*, recipiunt *take* post se *after them* hos genitivos *these genitive cases*; ipsius *of himself*, solius *of him alone*, unius *of one*, duorum *of two*, trium, *of three*, &c. omnium *of all*, plurium *of more*, paucorum *of few*, cujusque *of every one*, et *and* also genitivos *the genitive cases* participiorum *of participles*, qui *which* referuntur *are referred* ad primitivum *to the primitive word* subauditum *understood*: ut *as*, Dixi *I affirmed* rempublicam *that the state* esse salvam *was preserved* meâ *unius* operâ *by my single service*. Meum *solius* peccatum *my offence alone* non potest *cannot* corrigi *be amended*. Cùm *whereas* nemo *nobody* legat *reads* scripta mea *timentis the writings of me* fearing recitare *to rehearse* them vulgò *publicly*. Ceperis *conjecturam* you may guess *de studio tuo ipsius by your own study*. Præstantior *more excellent* in suâ *cujusque* laude *each in his own skill*. Nostrâ *omnium* memoriâ *in the memory of us all*. Respondet *he answers* vestris *paucorum* laudibus *the praises of you few*.

Sui *of himself* et *and* suus *his own* sunt *are* reciproca
reciprocals,

reciprocals, hoc est that is, reflectuntur they have relation semper always ad id to that quod which præcessit went before præcipuum most to be noted in sententiâ in the sentence : ut as, Petrus Peter admiratur admires se himself nimium too much. Parcit he spares erroribus suis his own errors. Petrus Peter magnoperè rogat earnestly begs ne se deseras that you would not forsake him.

Hæc demonstrativa these pronouns demonstrative, hic, iste, ille, distinguuntur are distinguished sic thus : hic, demonstrat points to proximum the nearest mihi to me; iste, eum him qui who est is apud te by you; ille, eum him qui who est is remotus at a distance ab utroque from both of us.

Cùm when hic, et and ille, referuntur are referred ad duo anteposita to two things or persons going before, hic, plerumque generally refertur is referred ad posterius to the latter, ille, ad prius to the former: ut as, Quocunque which way soever aspicias you look est there is nihil nothing nisi but pontus sea et and aër the air, hic the latter tumidus swelling nubibus with clouds, ille the former minax threatening fluctibus with waves.

VERBA substantiva verbs substantive; ut as, Sum I am, forem I might be, fio I am made, existo I am: Verba passiva verbs passive vocandi of calling: ut as, Nominor I am named, appellor I am called, dicor I am said, vocor I am called, nuncupor I am named, et and similia the like iis to them: ut as, Videor I am seen, habeor I am accounted, existimor I am thought; habent have eosdem casus the same cases utrinque on both sides: ut as, Deus God est is summum bonum the chief good. Perpusilli very little persons vocantur are called nani dwarfs. Fides faith habetur is reckoned fundamentum the foundation religionis nostræ of our religion. Natura nature dedit hath granted omnibus to all esse to be beatis happy.

*Item likewise omnia verba all verbs ferè in a manner admit tunc admit post se after them adjectivum an adjective quod which concordat agrees cum with nominativo
verbi*

verbi *the nominative case of the verb, casu in case, genere gender, et and numero number*: ut *as, Pii pious men orant pray taciti silently. Malus pastor a bad shepherd dormit sleeps supinus with his face upwards.*

SUM, postulat *requires genitivum a genitive case quoties as often as significat it signifies possessionem possession, officium duty, signum sign, aut or id that quod which pertinet has respect ad rem quampiam to any thing*: ut *as, Pecus the cattle est is Melibœi Melibœus's. Est it is the duty adolescentis of a young man revereri to reverence majores natu his elders.*

Hi nominativi *these nominative cases excipiuntur are excepted*: meum *mine, tuum thine, suum his, nostrum our, vestrum your, humanum human, belluinum brutal, et and similia the like*: ut *as, Non est meum it becomes not me dicere to speak contra against auctoritatem the authority senatûs of the senate. Est it is humanum an human frailty irasci to be angry.*

Verba *verbs accusandi of accusing, damnandi of condemning, monendi of warning, absolvendi of acquitting, et and similia the like, postulant require genitivum a genitive case, qui which significat signifies crimen the charge*: ut *as, Oportet it is fit eum that he qui who accusat accuses alterum another probri of dishonesty intueri should look into se ipsum himself. Condemnat he condemns generum suum his son-in-law sceleris of wickedness. Admoneto illum remind him pristinae fortunæ of his former condition. Absolutus est he is acquitted furti of theft.*

Hic genitivus *this genitive case vertitur is changed aliquando sometimes in ablativum into an ablative, vel either cum præpositione with a preposition, vel or sine præpositione without a preposition*: ut *as, Putavi I thought te esse admonendum you ought to be put in mind de eâ re of that matter. Si if es you are iniquus jûdex a partial judge in me to me, ego I condemnabo will condemn te you eodem crimine of the same crime.*

Uterque *both, nullus none, alter the other, neuter neither*

neither of the two, alius another, ambo both, et and superlatus gradus the superlative degree, junguntur are joined verbis to verbs id genus of that kind non nisi only in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, Accusas do you accuse him furti of theft an or stupri dishonesty? utroque, vel or de utroque of both; ambobus, vel or de ambobus of both; neutro, vel or de neutro of neither. Accusaris you are accused de plurimis of very many things simul at once.

Satago to be busy about a thing, misereor, et and miseresco to pity, postulant require genitivum a genitive case: ut as, Is he satagit has his hands full rerum suarum of his own business. Oro I pray you miserere pity laborum tantorum so great distresses; miserere pity animæ a soul ferentis suffering non digna things undeserved. Et and miseresce pity generis tui your own family.

Reminiscor to remember, obliviscor to forget, meminisse to remember, recordor to call to mind, admittunt admit genitivum a genitive case, aut or accusativum an accusative: ut as, Reminiscitur he remembers datæ fidei his promise. Est it is proprium the property stultitiæ of folly cernere to discern aliorum vitia other men's faults, oblivisci to forget suorum its own. Faciam I will give you cause ut memineris to remember hujus loci this place semper always. Juvabit it will be a pleasure olim hereafter meminisse to call to mind hæc these things. Recordor I remember hujus meriti this favour in me towards me. Si if recordor I recollect ritè well audita the things I heard.

Potior to gain or enjoy jungitur is joined aut either genitivo to a genitive case, aut or ablativo to an ablative: ut as, Romani the Romans potiti sunt gained signorum the standards et and armorum the arms. Troës the Trojans egressi being landed potiuntur enjoy optatâ arenâ the wished for shore.

OMNIA verba all verbs regunt govern dativum a dative case ejus rei of that thing cui to or for which aliquid any thing acquiritur is gotten aut or adimitur is taken away:

away: ut *as*, Nec seritur *there is neither sowing* nec metitur *nor mowing* mihi *for me* istic *in this matter*. Quis casus *what accident* ademit te *hath taken thee from* mihi *me*?

VERBA *verbs* varii generis *of various sorts* appendent *belong* huic regulæ *to this rule*.

Imprimis *in the first place* verba *verbs* significantia *signifying* commodum *advantage* aut *or* incommodum *disadvantage* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Non potes *you cannot* commodare *serve* nec *nor* incommodare *disserve* mihi *me*.

Ex his *of these*, juvo *to help*, lædo *to hurt*, delecto *to delight*, et *and* alia quædam *some other verbs* exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case*: ut *as*, Quies *rest* plurimùm *juvat very much delights* fessum *a wearied man*.

Verba *verbs* comparandi *of comparing* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Sic *thus* solebam *was* I *used* componere *to compare* magna *great things* parvis *to small*.

Verò *but* interdum *sometimes* ablativum *an ablative case* cum præpositione *cum with the preposition* cum: interdum *sometimes* accusativum *an accusative case* cum *with* præpositionibus *ad et inter, the prepositions ad and inter*: ut *as*, Comparo *I compare* Virgilium *Virgil* cum *with* Homero *Homer*. Si *if* comparatur *he is compared* ad eum *to him* nihil est *he is nothing*. Hæc *these things* non sunt *are not* conferenda *to be compared* inter se *one with another*.

Verba *verbs* dandi *of giving* et *and* reddendi *of restoring* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Fortuna *fortune* dat *giveth* nimis *too much* multis *to many*, satis *enough* nulli *to nobody*. Est *he is* ingratus *ungrateful*, qui *who* non reponit *does not return* gratiam *thanks* bene merenti *to his benefactor*.

Verba *verbs* promittendi *of promising* ac *and* solvendi *of paying* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case*: ut *as*, Quæ *which things* promitto *I promise* tibi *to you*, ac *and* recipio *engage* esse observaturum *to observe* sanctis-

sime

simè most religiously. Numeravit *he paid* mihi *me* æs alienum *the debt.*

Verba *verbs* imperandi *of commanding* et *and* nuntiandi *of telling* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* : ut *as*, Pecunia *money* collecta *gathered up* imperat *commands* aut *or* servit *serves* cuique *every man*. Sæpe *often* videto *take care* quid dicas *what you say* de quoque viro *of any man*, et *and* cui *to whom*.

Excipe *except* rego *to rule*, guberno *to govern*, quæ *which* verbshabent *have* accusativum *an accusative case* : tempero *to rule*, et *and* moderor *to rule*, quæ *which* nunc *sometimes* habent *have* dativum *a dative case*, nunc *sometimes* accusativum *an accusative case* : ut *as*, Luna *the moon* regit *rules* menses *the months*. Deus *ipse* God *himself* gubernat *governs* orbem *the world*. Ipse *he* temperat *sibi* *has the command of himself*. Sol *the sun* temperat *orders* omnia *all things* luce *by its light*. Hic *he* moderatur *manages* equos *his horses*, qui *who* non moderabitur *will not govern* iræ *his passion*.

Verba *verbs* fidendi *of trusting* regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* : ut *as*, Decet *it is fit* committere *to commit* nil *nothing* nisi *but* lene *what is soft* vacuis venis *to the empty veins*.

Verba *verbs* obsequendi *of complying with* et *and* repugnandi *of opposing*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* : ut *as*, Pius *filius* *a dutiful son* semper *always* obtemperat *obeys* patri *his father*. Fortuna *fortune* repugnat *opposes* ignavis precibus *the prayers of the slothful*.

Verba *verbs* minandi *of threatening* et *and* irascendi *of being angry*, regunt *govern* dativum *a dative case* : ut *as*, Minitatus est *he threatened* mortem *death* utrique *to both*. Nihil est *there is no reason* quod succenseam *why I should be angry* adolescenti *with the young man*.

Sum cum *compositis with its compounds*, præter except possum, regit *governs* dativum *a dative case* : ut *as*, Rex *pious* *a pious king* est *is* ornamentum *an ornament* reipublicæ *to the state*. Nec obest *it neither hurts* nec prodest *nor profits* mihi *me*.

Verba *verbs* composita *compounded* cum *his* adverbiiis *with*

with these adverbs, bene well, satis enough, malè ill; et and cum his præpositionibus with these prepositions, præ, ad, con, sub, ante, post, ob, in, inter, fermè for the most part regunt governativum a dative case: ut as, Dii may the gods benefaciant do good tibi to thee! Ego I præluxi outshone meis majoribus my ancestors virtute in virtue. Qui who intempestivè out of season adluserit joked upon him occupato when he was busy. Hoc this conducit conduces tuæ laudi to your praise. Convixit he lived nobis with us. Subolet uxori my wife has a jealousy jam already quod ego machinor what I am contriving. Antefero I prefer iniquissimam pacem the most unequal peace justissimo bello before the most just war. Postpono I postpone pecuniam money famæ to reputation. Quoniam because ea she potest can obtrudi be thrust nemini upon nobody itur ad me they come to me. Periculum danger impendit hangs over omnibus all. Non solùm interfuit he was not only present his rebus at these things, sed but etiam ulso præfuit he was chief in them.

Non pauca *not a few* ex his of these aliquoties sometimes mutant change dativum the dative in alium casum into another case: ut as, Alius one præstat exceeds alium another ingenio in ability.

Est, pro for habeo to have, regit governs dativum a dative case: ut as, Namque for est mihi I have pater a father domi at home, est I have injusta noverca a severe step-mother.

Suppetit it sufficeth est is simile like huic to this: ut as, Enim for non est he is not pauper poor cui rerum suppetit usus who has a sufficiency.

Sum, cum multis aliis with many others, admittit admittit geminum dativum a double dative case: ut as, Mare the sea est is exitio the destruction avidis nautis of greedy sailors. Speras do you expect fore that should be laudi a credit tibi to yourself quod which vertis you impute vitio as a fault mihi to me?

Est ubi sometimes hic dativus this dative case tibi, aut or sibi, aut or etiam also mihi, additur is added elegantiae causâ for the sake of elegance in expression: ut as,

as, Jugulo *I stab hunc this man suo sibi gladio with his own sword.*

VERBA transitiva *verbs transitive* cujuscunque generis *of what kind soever*, sive *whether* activi *active*, sive *or* deponentis *deponent*, sive *or* communis *common*, exigunt *require* accusativum *an accusative case*: ut as, Fugito *avoid* percontatorem *an inquisitive person*, nam *for* idem *the same* est *is* garrulus *a blab*. Aper *the boar* depopulatur *lays waste* agros *the fields*. Imprimis *in the first place* venerare deos *address yourself to the gods*.

Verba neutra *verbs neuter* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative case* cognatæ significationis *of a like signification*: ut as, Servit *he serves* duram servitutem *a hard servitude*.

Sunt *there are* some verbs quæ *which* habent *have* accusativum *an accusative case* figuratè *by a figure*: ut as, Nec *nor* vox *does your voice* sonat *sound* hominem *like a human creature*, ô dea *O a goddess* ! certè *doubtless*.

Verba *verbs* rogandi *of asking*, docendi *of teaching*, vestiendi *of clothing*, celandi *of concealing*, ferè *commonly* regunt *govern* duplicem accusativum *two accusative cases*: ut as, Tu *modò do but you* posce *ask* veniam *pardon* deos *of the gods*. Dedocebo *I will unteach* te *you* istos mores *those manners*. Ridiculum est *it is a jest* te *for you* admonere *me to remind me* istuc *of that*. Induit se *he put on* calceos *the shoes* quos *which* exuerat *he had put off* priùs *before*. Consuefeci *I have accustomed* filium *my son* ne celet *not to conceal* ea *these things* me *from me*.

Verba *verbs* hujusmodi *of this sort* habent *have* post se *after them* accusativum *an accusative case* etiam *also* in passivâ voce *in the passive voice*: ut as, Posceris *you are required* to sacrificæ *exta the entrails* bovis *of a heifer*.

Nomina appellativa *nouns appellative* ferè *commonly* adduntur *are added* cum *with* præpositione *a preposition* verbis *to verbs* quæ *which* denotant *denote* motum *motion*: ut as, Ibant *they went* ad templum *to the temple* Palladis *of Pallas*.

QUODVIS verbum *every verb* admittit *admits* ablativum

tivum *an ablative case significantem signifying instrumentum the instrument, aut or causam the cause, aut or modum the manner actionis of an action*: ut as, *Hi these certant endeavour defendere to defend themselves jaculis with darts, illi they saxis with stones. Vehementer excanduit he turned excessively pale ira with anger. Peregit he performed rem the matter mira celeritate with wonderful dispatch.*

Nomen pretii *a noun of price subijcitur is put after quibusdam verbis some verbs in ablativo casu in the ablative case*: ut as, *Non emerim I would not purchase it teruncio at a farthing, seu or vitiosâ nuce a rotten nut. Ea victoria that victory stetit cost Pœnis the Carthaginians multorum sanguine much blood ac and vulneribus wounds.*

Vili *at a low rate, paulo for little, minimo for very little, magno for much, nimio for too much, plurimo for very much, dimidio for half, duplo for twice as much, ponuntur are put sæpe often per se by themselves, voce pretio the word pretio (price) subauditâ being understood*: ut as, *Triticum wheat venit is sold vili at a low rate.*

Hi genitivi *these genitive cases positi put sine substantivis without substantives excipiuntur are excepted*; tanti *for so much, quanti for how much, pluris for more, minoris for less, tantidem for just so much, quantivis for as much as you please, quantilibet the same, quanticunque for how much soever*: ut as, *Eris you will be tanti of so much value aliis to others quanti as fueris you are tibi to yourself.*

Flocci *of a lock of wool, nauci of a nutshell, nihili of nothing, pili of a hair, assis of a penny, hujus of this, teruncii of a farthing, adduntur are added peculiariter very properly verbis to verbs æstimandi of esteeming*: ut as, *Ego illum flocci pendo I don't value him of a straw, nec hujus facio nor do I regard him this, qui who me pili æstimat esteems me not a hair.*

Verba verbs abundandi *of abounding, implendi of filling, onerandi of loading, et and his diversa their contraries, junguntur are joined ablativo to an ablative case*: ut as, *Antipho, abundas you abound amore with what you love.*

Sylla

Sylla explevit *filled* omnes suos *all his army* divitiis *with riches*. Quibus mendaciis *with what lies* homines levissimi *have the vainest men* onerârunt *loaded to you?* Ex-pedi *clear to yourself* hoc crimine *of this charge*.

Ex quibus *of which* quædam *some verbs* nonnunquam *sometimes* regunt *govern* genitivum *a genitive case*: ut as, Implentur *they are filled* veteris Bacchi *with old wine*, que *and* pinguis ferinæ *fat venison*. Quasi *as though* tu indigeas *you have need of* hujus patris *his father*.

Fungor *to discharge*, fruor *to enjoy*, utor *to use*, vescor *to live upon*, dignor *to think one's self worthy*, muto *to change*, communico *to communicate*, supersedeo *to pass by*, junguntur *are joined* ablativo *to an ablative case*: ut as, Qui *he who* volet *shall desire* adipisci *to get* veram gloriam *true glory* fungatur *should discharge* officiis *the duties* justitiæ *of justice*. Est *it is* optimum *an excellent thing* frui *to profit* alienâ insaniâ *by the madness of others*. Juvat 'tis *of service* si *if* utare *you can use* animo bono *a good courage* in re malâ *in a bad matter*. Vescor *I eat* carnibus *flesh*. Equidem *truly* hand dignor me *I don't think myself worthy* tali honore *of such honour*. Diruit *he pulls down*, ædificat *he builds*, mutat *he changes* quadrata *square things* rotundis *for round*. Communicabo te *I will give you access* mensâ meâ *to my table*. Supersedendum est *we must forbear* multitudine *a multitude* verborum *of words*.

Mereor *to deserve*, cum *adverbiis* *with these adverbs* bene *well*, malè *ill*, meliùs *better*, pejùs *worse*, optimè *very well*, pessimè *very ill*, jungitur *is joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* cum præpositione *de* *with the preposition* *de*: ut as, Nunquam *he never* meritus est *deserved* bene *well* de me *of me*.

Quædam verba *certain verbs* accipiendi *of receiving*, distandi *of being distant*, et *and* auferendi *of taking away*, aliquando *sometimes* junguntur *are joined* dativo *to a dative case*: ut as, Celata virtus *concealed virtue* paulùm distat *differs little* sepultæ inertię *from lifeless sloth*. Eripe te moræ *throw off* delay.

Ablativus *an ablative case* sumptus *taken* absolutè *absolutely*

solutely additur is put quibuslibet verbis to any verbs: ut as, Christus Christ natus est was born imperante Augusto when Augustus was emperor, crucifixus was crucified imperante Tiberio when Tiberius was emperor. Me duce I being your guide eris you will be tutus safe.

Ablativus an ablative case partis of the part affectæ affected, et and poëticè by the poets accusativus an accusative, additur is added verbis quibusdam to some verbs: ut as, Ægrotat he is sick animo in mind magis more quàm than corpore in body. Candet dentes his teeth are white. Rubet capillos his hair is red.

Quædam some of these verbs usurpantur are used etiam also cum genitivo with a genitive case: ut as, Facis you act absurdè absurdly qui who angas tormentest te yourself animi in mind.

ABLATIVUS *an ablative case agentis of the doer additur is added passivis to verbs passive, sed but præpositione with the preposition à vel or ab, antecedente going before; et and also interdum sometimes dativus a dative case: ut as, Laudatur he is praised ab his by these, culpatur he is blamed ab illis by those. Honesta things honest non occulta not things hidden quærantur are aimed at bonis viris by good men.*

Cæteri casus the other cases manent continue in passivis in verbs passive, qui which fuerunt belonged to them activorum as actives: ut as, Accusaris you are accused furti of theft à me by me. Habeberis ludibrio you will be made a laughing-stock. Dedoceberis you shall be untaught istos mores those manners à me by me. Privaberis you shall be deprived magistratu of your office.

*Vapulo to be beaten, veneo to be sold, liceo to be prized, exulo to be banished, fio to be made, neutro-passiva neuter-passives habent have passivum constructionem a passive construction: ut as, Vapulabis you shall be beaten à præceptore by the master. Malo I had rather spoliari be stript à cive by a citizen quàm than venire be sold ab hoste by an enemy. Virtus virtus licet is set parvo pretio at a low price ab omnibus by all. Cur why exulat philo-
sophia*

sophia is philosophy banished à convivantibus by persons at feasts? Quid what fiet will become ab illo of him?

VERBA infinita verbs of the infinitive mood adduntur are put after quibusdam verbis some verbs, participiis participles, et and adjectivis adjectives, et and also substantivis substantives poëtice by the poets: ut as, Amor love jussit commanded me scribere to write quæ what things puduit I was ashamed dicere to speak. Jussus being ordered confundere foedus to violate the treaty. Erat he was tum then dignus worthy amari to be loved. Tempus it is time tibi for you abire to be gone.

Verba infinita verbs of the infinitive mood interdum sometimes ponuntur are put sola alone per ellipsin by the figure ellipsis: ut as, Hinc upon this spargere in vulgum [he began] to scatter abroad voces ambiguas doubtful sayings, et and conscius knowing himself guilty quærere to seek arma means to destroy me: incipiebat he began subauditur hic is here understood.

GERUNDIA gerunds et and supina supines regunt govern casus the cases suorum verborum of their own verbs: ut as, Efferor I am transported studio with desire videndi of seeing patres vestros your fathers. Utendum est we must make use of ætate our time; ætas time præterit passeth away cito pede with a nimble pace. Mittimus we send scitatum to consult oracula the oracle Phœbi of Apollo.

GERUNDIA in di gerunds in di habent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with genitivis genitive cases, et and pendent depend tum both à quibusdam substantivis on certain substantives, tum and also adjectivis adjectives: ut as, Innatus amor a natural desire habendi of getting honey urget excites Cecropias apes the Attic bees. Æneas, celsâ in puppi in his tall ship jam certus already determined eundi to go.

Gerundia in do gerunds in do obtinent have eandem constructionem the same construction cum with ablativis ablative cases; et and also gerundia in dum gerunds in dum cum with accusativis accusative cases: ut as, Ratio the means scribendi of writing conjuncta est is joined

cum loquendo *with speaking*. Vitium *the disease* alitur *is nourished*, que and vivit *lives* tegendo *by being concealed*. Locus *a place* amplissimus *very honourable* ad agendum *to plead in*.

Cum *when* necessitas *necessity* significatur *is signified*, gerundia *in dum gerunds ending in dum* ponuntur *are used* citra præpositionem *without a preposition*, addito verbo *est the verb est being added* : ut as, Orandum *est we must pray* ut sit *that he may have* mens sana *a sound mind* in corpore sano *in a sound body*. Vigilandum *est ei he must watch* qui *who* cupit *desires* vincere *to conquer*.

Gerundia *gerunds* etiam *also* vertuntur *are changed* in nomina adjectiva *into nouns adjective* : ut as, Duci *to be persuaded* præmio *by a bribe* ad accusandos homines *to accuse men* est *is* proximum *next* akin latrocinio *to robbery*.

SUPINUM in um *the supine in um* significat *signifies* activè *actively*, et *and* sequitur *follows* verbum *a verb*, aut *or* participium *a participle*, significans *signifying* motum *motion* ad locum *to a place* : ut as, Veniunt *they come* spectatum *to see*, veniunt *they come* ut *that* ipsæ *they themselves* spectentur *may be seen*. Milites *soldiers* missi *sunt* *were sent* speculatum *to view* arcem *the citadel*.

Supinum in u *the supine in u* significat *signifies* passivè *passively*, et *and* sequitur *follows* nomina adjectiva *nouns adjective* : ut as, Quod *that* which est *is* fœdum *foul* factu *to be done*, idem *the same* est *is* et *also* turpe *shameful* dictu *to be spoken*.

QUÆ *nouns* which significant *signify* partem temporis *part of time*, ponuntur *are put* frequentius *more commonly* in ablativo *in the ablative case* : ut as, Nemo mortalium *no mortal man* sapit *is wise* omnibus horis *at all hours*.

Autem *but* quæ *nouns* which significant *signify* durationem *the duration* temporis *of time*, ponuntur *are put* ferè *commonly* in accusativo *in the accusative case* : ut as, Hic *here* jam *from this time* regnabitur *kings shall reign* ter centum totos annos *full three hundred years*.

Dicimus etiam *we say also* : In paucis diebus *within a few days*. De die *by day*. De nocte *by night*. Promitto
I promise

I promise in diem for a day. Commodo I lend in mensem for a month. Annos ad quinquaginta natus fifty years old. Studui I studied per tres annos three years. Puer a child id ætatis of that age. Non plus not above triduum, aut or triduo, three days. Tertio, vel or ad tertium upon the third calendas, vel or calendarum, of the calends.

SPATIUM *the space loci of a place ponitur is put in accusativo in the accusative case, et and interdum sometimes in ablativo in the ablative: ut as, Jam now processeram I had advanced mille passus a mile. Abest he is distant quingentis millibus passuum five hundred miles ab urbe from the city. Item also, Abest he is distant bidui two days' journey: ubi where spatium, vel or spatio, itinere, vel or iter, intelligitur is understood.*

OMNE *verbum every verb admittit admits genitivum a genitive case nominis of the name oppidi of a city or town in quo in which actio fit any thing is done; modò so that sit it be primæ of the first vel or secundæ declinationis second declension, et and singularis numeri of the singular number: ut as, Quid faciam what shall I do Romæ at Rome? mentiri nescio I cannot lie.*

Hi genitivi these genitive cases, humi upon the ground, domi at home, militiæ in war, belli in war, sequuntur follow formam the construction propriorum of proper names; ut as, Arma arms sunt are parvi of little worth foris abroad, nisi unless est there be consilium wisdom domi at home. Fuimus we were semper always unà together militiæ in war, et and domi at home.

Verum but si if nomen the name oppidi of a city or town fuerit shall be pluralis numeri of the plural number duntaxat only, aut or tertiæ declinationis of the third declension, ponitur it is put in ablativo in the ablative case: ut as, Colchus a Colchian, an or Assyrius an Assyrian, nutritus brought up Thebis at Thebes, an or Argis at Argos. Ventosus being inconstant, Romæ at Rome amem I love Tibur Tibur, Tibure at Tibur Romam I love Rome.

Nomen the name loci of a place ferè commonly additur is put after verbis verbs significantibus signifying motum motion

motion ad locum to a place in accusativo in the accusative case sine præpositione without a preposition : ut as, Concessi I went Cantabrigiam to Cambridge ad capiendum ingenii cultum to get learning.

Ad hunc modum *after this manner utimur we use domus a house et and rus the country : ut as, Capellæ ye she goats saturæ being full ite domum go home, Hesperus the evening venit approaches, ite be gone. Ego I rus ibo will go into the country.*

Nomen *the name loci of a place ferè commonly additur is put after verbis verbis significantibus signifying motum motion à loco from a place in ablativo in the ablative case, sine præpositione without a preposition : ut as, Nisi profectus esses if you had not gone Româ from Rome antè before, relinqueres you would leave eam it nunc now.*

IMPERSONALIA *verbs impersonal non habent have not nominativum a nominative case : ut as, Juvat it is pleasant ire to go sub umbras under the shade.*

Hæc impersonalia *these impersonals, interest it concerns, et and refert it concerns, junguntur are joined quibuslibet genitivis to any genitive case, præter besides hos ablativos foemininos these ablative cases feminine, meâ, tuâ, suâ, nostrâ, vestrâ, et and cuiâ : ut as, Interest it concerns magistratûs the magistrate tueri to defend bonos the good, animadvertere in malos to punish the bad. Tuâ refert it concerns you nôsse to know teipsum yourself.*

Et also hi genitivi *these genitive cases adduntur are added, tanti so much, quanti how much, magni much, parvi little, quanticunque how much soever, tantidem just so much : ut as, Tanti refert of such concern it is agere to do honesta honest things.*

Impersonalia *verbs impersonal posita acquisitivè put acquisitively postulant require dativum a dative case : autem but quæ those verbs which ponuntur are put transitivè transitively, accusativum an accusative case : ut as, Benefic nobis we enjoy blessings à Deo from God. Juvat it delights me me ire per altum to travel*
by sea.

Verò *but* præpositio ad *the preposition* ad propriè additur *is peculiarly added* his *to these verbs*, attinet *it belongs*, pertinet *it pertains*, spectat *it concerns*: ut *as*, Vis *would you have me* me dicere *to speak* quod *what* attinet *belongs* ad *te to you*? Spectat *ad omnes it concerns all men vivere to live bene well*.

Accusativus *an accusative case* cum genitivo *with a genitive* subjicitur *is put after* his impersonalibus *these verbs impersonal*, pœnitet *it repents*, tædet *it wearies*, miseret, miserescit *it pities*, pudet *it shames*, piget *it grieves*: ut *as*, Si *if* vixisset *he had lived* ad centesimum annum *to the hundredth year* non pœniteret *it would not have repented* eum *him* senectutis suæ *of his old age*. Miseret me tui *I pity you*.

Verbum impersonale *a verb impersonal* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice* potest *may* accipi *be taken* pro singulari personis *for each person* utriusque numeri *of both numbers* eleganter *elegantly*: ut *as*, Statur *it is stood*, id est *that is*, sto *I stand*, stas *thou standest*, stat *he stands*, stamus *we stand*, statis *ye stand*, stant *they stand*: videlicet *that is to say* ex vi *by* virtutis casûs *of a case* adjuncti *added to it*: ut *as*, Statur *it is stood* à me *by me*, id est *that is*, sto *I stand*: statur *it is stood* ab illis *by them*, id est *that is*, stant *they stand*.

PARTICIPIA *participles* regunt *govern* casus *the cases* verborum *of the verbs* à quibus *from which* derivantur *they are derived*: ut *as*, Tendens *spreading* duplices palmas *both his hands* ad sidera *towards heaven* voce refert *he utters* talia *such things*.

Dativus *a dative case* interdum *sometimes* additur *is added* participiis *to participles* passivæ vocis *of the passive voice*, præsertim *especially* si *if* exeunt *they end* in dus: ut *as*, Magnus *a mighty* civis *citizen* obiit *died*, et *and* formidatus *dreaded* Othoni *by Otho*. Chremes, restat *remains*, qui *who* est *is* exorandus *to be prevailed upon* mihi *by me*.

Participia *participles*, cùm *when* fiunt *they become* nomina *nouns* exigunt *require* genitivum *a genitive case*.

ut *as*, *Appetens greedy alieni of another man's, profusus lavish sui of his own.*

Exosus hating, perosus utterly hating, pertæsus weary of, significantia *signifying* activè *actively*, exigunt *require accusativum an accusative case*: ut *as*, *Astronomus an astronomer exosus hating mulieres women ad unam in general. Perosæ utterly hating immundam segnitiam filthy idleness. Pertæsus weary of ignaviam suam his own sluggishness.*

Exosus hated, et and perosus hated to death, significantia *signifying* passivè *passively*, leguntur *are read cum dativo with a dative case*: ut *as*, *Exosus hated Deo of God et and sanctis the saints. Germani the Germans perosi sunt are mortally hated Romanis by the Romans.*

Natus born, prognatus born, satus sprung, cretus descended, creatus produced, ortus risen, editus brought forth, exigunt *require ablativum an ablative case, et and sæpe oftentimes cum præpositione with a preposition*: ut *as*, *Bona a virtuous lady prognata born bonis parentibus of good parents. Sate O thou who art sprung sanguine from the blood divum of the gods. Quo sanguine from what blood cretus he descended. Venus, orta sprung mari from the sea, præstat mare secures the sea eunti to the passenger. Terrâ editus sprung from the earth. Fui I was nympha a nymph edita descended de magno flumine of a great river.*

EN, et and ecce, adverbia adverbs demonstrandi of showing, junguntur are joined frequentius most commonly nominativo to a nominative case, accusativo to an accusative rarius but seldom; ut *as*, *En see Priamus Priam. Ecce tibi behold status noster our condition. En behold quatuor aras four altars: Ecce see there duas two tibi for you Daphni Daphnis, que and duo altaria two raised altars Phœbo for Phœbus.*

En, et and ecce, exprobrandi adverbs of upbraiding, junguntur are joined soli accusativo to an accusative case only: ut *as*, *En animum et mentem see his mind and disposition. Ecce autem alterum but see the other here.*

QUEDAM

QUÆDAM adverbia *certain adverbs* loci *of place*, temporis *of time*, et *and* quantitatis *quantity*, admittunt *admit* genitivum *a genitive case*.

1. Loci *of place* : ut *as*, Ubi *where*, ubinam *where*, nusquam *no where*, eò *thither*, longè *far*, quò *whither*, ubivis *any where*, huccine *what hither*, &c. ut *as*, Ubi gentium *where in the world*? Invenitur *he is found* nusquam loci *no where*. Ventum est *men are arrived* eò impudentiæ *at such a degree of impudence*. Quò terrarum *to what part of the earth* abiit *is he gone*?

2. Temporis *of time* : ut *as*, Nunc *now*, tunc *then*, tum *then*, interea *in the mean time*, pridie *the day before*, postridie *the day after*, &c. ut *as*, Poteram *I could do* nihil *nothing* ampliùs *more* tunc temporis *at that time* quàm *than* flere *weep*. Inierunt *they began* pugnam *the battle* pridie *the day before* ejus diei *that day*. Pridie *the day before* calendarum, vel *or* calendarum, *the calend.*

3. Quantitatis *of quantity* : ut *as*, Parùm *but little*, satis *enough*, abundè *abundantly*, &c. ut *as*, Satis eloquentiæ *eloquence enough*, sapientiæ parùm *wisdom little enough*. Audivimus *we have heard* abundè fabularum *a world of tales*.

Quædam *some adverbs* admittunt *admit* casus *the cases* nominum *of the nouns* unde *from which* deducta sunt *they are derived* : ut *as*, Vivit *he lives* inutiliter *unprofitably* sibi *to himself*. Mauri *the Moors* sunt *are* proximè Hispaniam *next to Spain*. Meliùs *better* vel *or* optimè *the best* omnium *of all*. Morabatur *he staid* ampliùs opinione *longer than was expected*.

Adverbia *these adverbs* diversitatis *of diversity*, aliter *otherwise*, secùs *otherwise* ; et *and* illa duo *these two*, antè *before*, pòst *after*, non rarò junguntur *are often joined* ablativo *to an ablative case* : ut *as*, Multo aliter *much otherwise*. Paulo secùs *little otherwise*. Multo antè *much before*. Paulo pòst *a little after*. Venit *he came* longo pòst tempore *a long time after*.

Instar *like or equal to* et *and* ergò *for the sake of* sumpta *being taken* adverbialiter *as adverbs* habent *have* genitivum

genitivum *a genitive case* post se *after them*; ut *as*, Ædificant *they build* equum *a horse* divinâ arte *by the divine assistance* Palladis *of Pallas* instar montis *as big as a mountain*. Donari *to be rewarded* ergo *for the sake of* virtutis *virtue*.

CONJUNCTIONES copulativæ *conjunctions copulative*, et *and* disjunctivæ *disjunctive*, conjungunt *couple* similés casus *the like cases*, modos *moods*, et *and* tempora *tenses*: ut *as*, Socrates, docuit *taught* Xenophontem *Xenophon* et *and* Platonem *Plato*. Stat *he stands* corpore *with his body* recto *upright*, que *and* despicit *looks down upon* terras *the earth*. Nec scribit *he neither writes* nec legit *nor reads*.

Nisi *unless* ratio *the reason* variæ constructionis *of a different construction* poscat *requires it should be aliud otherwise*: ut *as*, Emi *I bought* librum *a book* centussâ *for a hundred pence* et *and* pluris *more*. Vixi *I lived* Romæ *at Rome* et *and* Venetiis *at Venice*. Nisi *unless* lactasses *me you had fed me up* amantem *being in love*, et *and* produceres *drew me on* falsâ spe *with false hope*.

Quàm *the conjunction* quàm, sæpe *oftentimes* intelligitur *is understood* post *after* ampliùs *more*, plùs *more*, et *and* minùs *less*: ut *as*, Sunt *there are* ampliùs *more* sex menses *than six months*. Paulo plùs *somewhat more* trecenta *than three hundred* vehicula *carriages* sunt amissa *are lost*. Nix *the snow* nunquam *never* jacuit *lay* alta *deep* minùs *less* quatuor pedes *than four feet*.

QUIBUS modis *to what moods* verborum *of verbs* quædam adverbia *certain adverbs* et *and* conjunctiones *conjunctions* congruant *do agree*.

Ne, an, num *whether*, posita *being put* dubitative *doubtfully*, aut *or* indefinite *indefinitely*, junguntur *are joined* subjunctivo *to a subjunctive mood*: ut *as*, Nihil refert *it makes no difference* fecerisne *whether you have done it* an *or* persuaseris *persuaded to it*. Vise *go see* num *whether* redierit *he be returned*.

Dum, pro *for* dummodo *so that* et *and* quousque *until* postulat *requires* subjunctivum *a subjunctive mood*: ut
as,

as, Dum so that prosim *I may profit* tibi *you. Dum until* tertia æstas *the third summer* viderit *shall see.* regnantem *him reigning.*

Qui, significans *signifying causam the cause, exigit requiressubjunctivum a subjunctive mood: ut as, Es you are stultus a fool qui credas for believing huic this fellow.*

Ut, pro *for* postquam *after that, sicut as, et and quomodo how, jungitur is joined* indicativo *to an indicative mood: autem but cùm when denotat it signifies quam although, utpote for as much as, vel or finalem causam the final cause, subjunctivo to a subjunctive mood: ut as, Ut since that sumus we are in Ponto in Pontus, Ister the Danube frigore constitit has stood frozen ter three times. Ut as tute you yourself es are ita so censes you think omnes that all esse are. Ut although omnia all things contingant should fall out quæ which volo I would, non possum I cannot levare be eased. Non est fidendum no trust is to be given tibi to you ut qui because toties fefelleris you have so often deceived. Dave Davus, oro I intreat te you ut that jam now redeat he may return in viam into the way.*

Denique *lastly, omnes voces all words positæ put indefinitely indefinitely, quales such as sunt are these, quis who, quantus how great, quotus how many, &c. postulant require subjunctivum a subjunctive mood: ut as, Video I see cui to what sort of man scribam I am writing, Quantus how great assurgat he rises up in clypeum against the enemy's shield, quo turbine with what a force torqueat he hurls hastam the lance!*

PRÆPOSITIO *a preposition subaudita understood interdum sometimes facit makes ut that ablativus an ablative case addatur be added: ut as, Habeo I esteem te you loco in the place parentis of a parent, id est that is, in loco.*

Præpositio *a preposition in compositione in compositione nonnunquam sometimes regit governs eundem casum the same case quem which regebat it governed et also extra compositionem out of composition: ut as, Detrahunt*

dunt *they thrust off* naves the ships scopulo from the rock. Prætereo *I pass by* te you insalutatum *unsaluted*.

Verba verbs composita compounded cum with à, ab, ad, con, de, è, ex, in, nonnunquam sometimes repetunt repeat easdem præpositiones the same prepositions cum suo casu with their case extra compositionem out of composition, idque and that eleganter elegantly: ut as, Abstinuerunt *they abstained* à vino from wine.

In, pro for erga towards, contra against, ad to, et and supra above, exigit requires accusativum an accusative case: ut as, Accipit she admits animum mentémque benignam kind thoughts and inclinations in Teucros towards the Trojans. Peccem I should offend in publica commoda against the public good. Hæres an heir quæritur is sought in regnum for the kingdom. Imperium the power Jovis of Jupiter est is reges in ipsos over kings themselves.

Sub, cùm when refertur it relates ad tempus to time, ferè commonly jungitur is joined accusativo to an accusative case: ut as, Sub idem tempus about the same time, id est that is, circa, vel or per idem tempus.

Super, pro for ultra beyond, apponitur is put with accusativo an accusative case; pro for de concerning, ablativo with an ablative case: ut as, Proferet he will extend imperium the empire et both super Garamantas beyond the Africans et and Indos the Indians. Rogitans inquiring multa much super Priamo concerning Priam, multa much super Hectore concerning Hector.

Tenus as far as jungitur is joined ablativo to an ablative case et both singulari in the singular number et and plurali plural: ut as, Pube tenus as high as the groin, pectoribus tenus up to the breasts.

At but tantùm only genitivo to a genitive case plurali in the plural number, et and semper sequitur it always follows casum suum its case: ut as, Crurum tenus as far as the legs.

INTERJECTIONES interjections non rarò ponuntur are often put sine casu without a case: ut as, Connixa having

having yearned, reliquit she left spes gregis the hope of the flock, ah alas! silice in nudâ upon the bare flint-stones. Quæ dementia what madness is this, malum with a mischief!

O, exclamantis of one exclaiming, jungitur is joined nominativo to a nominative case, accusativo an accusative, et and vocativo a vocative: ut as, O festus dies O the joyful day hominis of mortal man! O nimium fortunatos agricolas O too fortunate husbandmen si nōrint if they knew sua bona their own happiness! O formose puer O beautiful boy! ne crede trust not nimium too much colori to your beauty.

Heu, et and proh alas, junguntur are joined nunc sometimes nominativo to a nominative case, nunc sometimes accusativo to an accusative: ut as, Heu pietas ah his piety! Heu prisca fides ah the ancient integrity! Heu stirpem invisam ah the odious stock! Proh Jupiter O Jupiter! tu thou, homo man, adigis drivest me me ad insaniam to madness. Proh fidem alas the help deum of gods atque and hominum of men! Item also vocativo to a vocative case, Proh sancte Jupiter O sacred Jupiter!

Hei, et and vae alas, junguntur are joined dativo to a dative case: ut as, Hei mihi woe is me, quod that amor love est is medicabilis curable nullis herbis by no herbs. Vae misero mihi wretched man that I am, quantâ de spe from how great hope decidi am I fallen!

PROSODIA

CONSTRUED.

PROSODIA prosody est is pars that part Grammaticæ of Grammar, quæ which docet teaches quantitatem the quantity or true sound syllabarum of syllables.

Prosodia prosody dividitur is divided in tres partes into three parts, tonum the tone, spiritum the breathing, et and tempus the time, that is to say, for the pronunciation of a long or short syllable.

Hoc loco *in this place*, visum est nobis *it is thought most proper* tractare *to treat* tantum *only* de tempore *of time*.

TEMPUS *time* est *is* mensura *the measure* syllabæ *proferendæ of a syllable to be uttered, or of the pronouncing of a syllable*.

Tempus breve *a short time* notatur *is distinguished* sic *thus* (~) ut *as for example*, Döminüs *the Lord*; autem *but* longum *a long time* sic *after this fashion* (-) ut *as*, cōntrā *against*.

Pes *a foot* est *is* constitutio *the placing together* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* pluriumve *or more*, ex certâ observatione *according to the certain observation* temporum *of the times, or measures of the syllables*.

Spondæus *a spondee* est *is* dissyllabus *a foot of two syllables*, ut *as*, vir-tus *virtue*.

Dactylus *a dactyl* est *is* trisyllabus *a foot of three syllables*, ut *as*, scri-be-re *to write*.

Scansio *scanning* est *is* legitima commensuratio *the measuring according to rule* versûs *of a verse* in singulos pedes *in every one (or each one) of the feet*.

Scansioni *to scanning a verse* accidunt *there belong* figuræ *the figures* called Synalœpha, Ecthipsis, Synæresis, Diæresis, et *and* Cæsura.

Synalœpha, est *is* elisio *the striking out* vocalis *of a vowel* in fine *at the end* dictionis *of a word* ante alteram *before another vowel* in initio *at the beginning* sequentis *of the following word*: ut *as*, vit' viv' *are here put* pro *for* vita *et* *and* vive, *in this verse*: Crastina vita *to-morrow's life* est *is* nimis sera *too late*, vive *live* hodie *to-day*.

At *but* heu, et *and* ô, nunquam *never* intercipiuntur *are never struck out (or cast off)*.

Ecthipsis, est *is*, quoties *as often as* in the letter m *perimitur is cut off* cum suâ vocali *with its vowel*, proxima dictione *the next word* exorsâ *beginning à* vocali *with a vowel*: ut *as*, Monstr' horrend' inform' *pro for* monstrum *horrendum* informe: Monstrum *a monster*, horrendum *horrible*, informe *mis-shapen*, ingens *vast*, cui lumen *ademptum* *deprived of sight*.

Synæresis,

Synæresis, est is contractio *the contraction* duarum syllabarum *of two syllables* in unam *into one*: ut *as*, alvearia is pronounced quasi scriptum esset *as if it had been written* alvaria: ut *as*, Seu *or whether* alvearia the hives *texta fuerint were wove* lento vimine *of the limber osier*.

Diæresis, est is ubi *when* ex unâ syllabâ *of one syllable* dissectâ *being dissected (or the letters separated)* duæ *two syllables* fiunt *are made*; ut *as*, evoluisse pro *for* evoluisse: ut *as*, Debuerunt *they ought* evoluisse *to have unwound* suos fusos *their spindles*.

Cæsura, est is cùm *when* post pedem absolutum *after a perfect foot* syllaba brevis *a short syllable* extenditur *is made long* in fine dictionis *at the end of the word*: ut *as*, Inhians *intent upon* pectoribus *the breasts (of the victims)* consulit *she consults* spirantia exta *their panting entrails*.

VERSUS heroicus *a heroic verse*, qui *which* dicitur etiam *is also called* Hexameter *an Hexameter*, constat consistit ex sex pedibus *of six feet*; Quintus locus *the fifth place* of the verse peculiaritèr peculiaritèr sibi vindicat *claims to itself* Dactylum *a dactyl*, sextus *the sixth place* requires Spondæum *a spondee*; reliqui *the other places* hunc vel illum *have this or that foot (either a dactyl or a spondee)* prout volumus *even as we will*: ut *as*, Tityre O Tityrus, tu thou recubans *lying along* sub tegmine *under the covering* patulæ fagi *of a wide spreading beech-tree*.

Spondæus *a spondee* etiam *also* aliquando *sometimes* reperitur *is found* in quinto loco *in the fifth place*: ut *as*, Cara soboles thou dear offspring deum *of the gods*, magni incrementum *the illustrious progeny* Jovis *of Jupiter*.

Ultima syllaba *the last syllable* cujuscunque versûs *of every verse* habetur *is accounted* communis *common*.

VERSUS elegiacus *an elegiac verse*, qui et *which also* habet *hath* nomen *the name* Pentametri *of Pentameter*, constat consisteth è duplici Penthemimeri *of two Penthemimers*, quarum prior *the former of which* comprehendit *contains* duos pedes *two feet*, dactylicos *dactyls*, spondiacos *spondees*, vel *or* alterutros *either of them*, cum syllabâ longâ *with a long syllable*: altera *the other* Pen-
themim

themimer etiam contains also *duos pedes two feet*, sed but omnino *dactylicos always (or altogether) dactyls*, item likewise cum syllabâ longâ with a long syllable: ut as, *Amor love est is res a thing plena full solliciti timoris of anxious fear*.

Of the Quantity of the first Syllable.

I. *Vocalis a vowel ante duas consonantes before two consonants*, aut or *duplicem a double consonant in eâdem dictione in the same word*, est is ubique *longa every where long positione by position*: ut as in the words, *ventus the wind*, *axis an axle-tree*, *patrîzo to do like his father*, *cujus of whom*.

II. *Quòd si but if consonans a consonant claudat endeth priorem dictionem the former word*, sequente the following word item also *inchoante beginning à consonante with a consonant*, *vocalis præcedens the vowel going before etiam also longa erit will be long positione by position*: ut as, *Major sum I am greater quàm than cui one whom fortuna fortune possit is able nocere to hurt*. Syllabæ the syllables *jor*, *sum*, *quàm*, et and *sit*, longæ sunt are here long positione by position.

III. At si but if prior dictio the former word exeat endeth in *vocalem brevem in a short vowel*, sequente the following word *incipiente beginning à duabus consonantibus with two consonants*, interdum sometimes *producitur it is made long*, sed but *rariùs very seldom*: ut as, *Occulta spolia they brought away the secret spoils et and plures triumphos often triumphed de pace for making peace among themselves*.

IV. *Vocalis brevis a short vowel ante mutam before a mute*, sequente *liquidâ a liquid following*, redditur is rendered communis common; ut as in the words, *patris of a father*, *volucris of a bird*: Verò but *longa a long vowel non mutatur is not changed*, ut as in the words *aratrum a plough*, *simulacrum an image*.

VOCALIS a vowel ante alteram before another vowel in eâdem dictione in the same word est is ubique *brevis every*

every where short, ut as in the words, Deus God, meus mine, tuus thine, pius pious.

Excipias *you may except* genitivos *the genitive cases* in ius *ending in ius*, habentes *having* secundam formam *the second form or declension* pronominis *of a pronoun*, ut *as*, unius *of one*, illius *of that*, &c. *and some others*; ubi *where (or in which words)* i *the vowel* i reperitur *is found* communis *common*, licet *although* in alterius *in the word* alterius *of another* semper sit *it be always* brevis *short*: in alius *in the word* alius *of another* semper longa *it is always long*.

Excipiendi sunt etiam *except likewise* genitivi *the genitive case*, et *and* dativi *the dative* quintæ declinationis *of the fifth declension*, ubi *e where* the vowel *e* inter geminum *i between two i's* longa fit *is made long*; ut *as in the word* faciei *of a face*: alioqui *non otherwise* not, ut *as in the words*, rei *of a thing*, spei *of hope*, fidei *of faith*.

Etiam *also* si *the syllable* fi in fio *in the word* fio *to be made or done* est longa *is long*; nisi *unless* e et r *the letters e and r* sequuntur *follow simul together*: ut *as in* fierem, fieri *to be made or done*: Jam *now* omnia *all things* fiunt *are done* quæ *which* negabam *I denied* posse *were able* fieri *to be done*.

Dius *heavenly* habet *hath* primam syllabam *the first syllable* longa *long*. Diana *the goddess* Diana communem *hath the first syllable* communem *common*.

Interjectio *ohe the interjection* ohe habet *hath* priorem syllabam *the former syllable* communem *common*.

Vocalis *a vowel* ante alteram *before another* in Græcis dictionibus *in Greek words* subinde *now and then* fit longa *is made long*; ut *as*, Dicite Pierides *say* O ye muses. Respice Lærtē *have regard to* Laertes.

Et *and also* in Græcis possessivis *in Greek possessives*: ut *as*, Æneia nutrix *Æneas's nurse*, Rhodopeius Orpheus *Orpheus of Rhodope*.

Omnis diphthongus *every diphthong* longa est *is long* apud Latinos *with the Latins*: ut *as*, Aurum *gold*, neuter *neither*, musæ *of a song, or songs*, nisi *except* sequente vocali

vocali *when a vowel followeth*: ut *as*, Præire *to go before*, præustus *burnt at one end*, præamplus *very large*.

DERIVATIVA *derivatives (or words derived of others)* ferè *commonly* sortiuntur *are assigned* eandem *quantity* cum *primitivis with their primitives (or the words they are derived from)*: ut *as*, Amator *a lover*, amicus *a friend*, amabilis *amiable*; primâ *brevi the first syllable being short*, ab amo *as being derived from the verb amo I love*.

Excipiuntur tamen *except however* pauca *a few words* quæ *which* deducta *being derived* à *brevibus from short syllables* producunt *make long* primam *syllabam the first syllable*: ut *as*, como comis *to comb or adorn the hair*, à coma *derived from coma the hair*; fomes *fuel*, et *and* fomentum *an assuaging plaster*, à *from* foveo *to cherish*; humanus *human, or humane*, ab homo *derived from homo a man or woman*: jucundus *pleasant*, à *from* juvo *to delight*; jumentum *a beast of burthen*, à *from* juvo *to help*; junior *younger*, à *from* juvenis *young*; laterna *a lantern*, à *from* lateo *to lie hid*; lex legis *a law*, à *from* lego *to read*; mobilis *moveable*, à *from* moveo *to move*; nonus *the ninth*, à *from* novem *nine*; rex regis *a king*, regina *a queen*, à *from* rego *to rule*; sedes *a seat*, à *from* sedeo *to sit*; tegula *a tile*, à *from* tego *to cover*; tragula *a javelin, also a drag-net*, à *from* traho *to draw*; vomer *a ploughshare*, à *from* vomo *to cast up*; vox vocis *a voice*, à *from* voco *to call*.

Et *and* contrâ *on the other hand* sunt *there are* some words quæ *which* deducta *though derived* à *longis from* primitivis *of a long syllable* corripiunt *make short* primam *the first syllable*: ut *as*, Arena *sand*, arista *the beard of corn*, arundo *a reed*, ab *derived from* areo *to be dry*; aruspex *a soothsayer*, ab *from* ara *an altar*; dicax *a jester*, à *from* dico *to speak*; ditio *power*, à *from* ditis *rich*; disertus *eloquent*, à *from* dissero *to dispute*; dux ducis *a leader*, à *from* duco *to lead*; fides *faith*, à *from* fio *to be made or done*; fragor *a noise or crash*, fragilis *frail*, à *from* frango *to break*; genui *I have begotten*, à *from* gigno *to beget*;

beget; lucerna a candle, à from luceo to shine; nato natas to shoot out, à from natu to be grown or sprung up; noto notas to mark, à from notu to be known; posui I have put, à from pono to put; potui I have been able, à from possum to be able; sopor a sound sleep, à from sopio to lay asleep.

Et *and alia nonnulla some other words ex utroque genere of either sort, quæ which relinquuntur are left observanda to be observed studiosis by the studious inter legendum in their reading.*

COMPOSITA *compound words sequuntur follow quantitatem the quantity simplicium of their simple words; ut as, à from lego legis to read, comes perlego to read through; à from lego legas to send as an ambassador, allego to allege or accuse by messengers; à from potens powerful, impotens weak; à from solor to cheer, consolor to comfort.*

Tamen *however hæc brevia these words having short syllables, enata though derived à longis from long syllables, excipiuntur are excepted; ut as, Dejero to swear a great oath, pejero to forswear, à from juro to swear; innuba unmarried, pronuba a bride-maid, à from nubo to be married.*

OMNE *præteritum every præterperfect tense dissyllabum of two syllables habet hath priorem the former syllable longam long: ut as, Legi I have read, emi I have bought, movi I have moved.*

1. Tamen *yet excipias you must except the words, bibi I drank, dedi I gave, scidi I have cut, steti I have stood, stiti I have staid, tuli I have borne or suffered, et and fidi, à from findo to cleave.*

2. Geminantia *words that double primam the first syllable præteriti of the præterperfect tense habent have primam the first syllable brevem short: ut as, Cecidi, I have fallen, à from cado to fall; cecidi I have beaten, à from cædo to beat; didici I have learned, fefelli I have deceived, momordi I have bitten, pependi I have weighed, pupugi I have pricked, tetendi I have stretched, tetigi I have touched, totondi I have sheared, tutudi I have thumped.*

SUPINUM

SUPINUM dissyllabum *a supine of two syllables* habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam *long*: ut *as*, visum *to see*, latum *to bear or suffer*, lotum *to wash*, motum *to move*.

Excipe *except* datum *to give*, itum *to go*, litum *to daub*, quitum *to may or can*, ratum *to suppose*, rutum *to rush*, satum *to sow*, situm *to suffer*, stitum *to stop*, et *and* citum, à *from* cieo *cies* *to stir up*; nam *for* citum, à *from* cio *cis* *to make to go*, quartæ *of the fourth conjugation*, habet *hath* priorem *the former syllable* longam *long*.

I. A **FINITA** words ending in a producuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, Ama *love thou*, contra *against*, erga *towards*.

Excipias *except*, puta *suppose*, ita *even so*, quia *because*, postea *afterwards*, eja, *well!* item also omnes casus *all cases* in a ending in a cujuscunque fuerint generis *of whatever gender they are*, numeri *number*, aut *or* declinationis *declension*; præter *except* vocativos *the vocative cases* à Græcis in *as of Greek words ending in as*: ut *as*, O Ænea O Æneas, O Thoma, O Thomas; et *and* ablativum *the ablative case* primæ declinationis *of the first declension*: ut *as*, musà *by or with a song*.

Numeralia *nouns of number* in ginta ending in ginta habent *have* finalem *the last syllable* communem *common*, sed *but* frequentius *more frequently* longam *long*: ut *as*, triginta *thirty*.

II. Desinentia words ending in b, d, t, brevia sunt *are short*: ut *as*, ab *from*, ad *to*, caput *the head*.

III. Desinentia words ending in c, producuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, ac *and*, sic *so*, et *and* adverbium *the adverb* hic *here*.

Sed *but* duo in c *two ending in c*, corripiuntur *are made short*; nec *neither*, et *and* donec *until*.

Tria sunt *there are three* communia *common*, fac *do thou*, pronomen *hic the pronoun* hic *he*, et *and* neutrum ejus *its neuter* hoc, modò *if so be* non sit *it is not* ablativi casus, *of the ablative case*.

IV. Finita e words ending in e brevia sunt *are short*: ut *as*, Mare *the sea*, penè *almost*, lege *read thou*, scribe *write thou*.

Omnes voces *all words* quintæ inflexionis of the fifth declension in e ending in e excipiendæ sunt are to be excepted: ut as, Fide the ablative case of fides faith, et and die in the day, unà cum particulis together with the particles inde enatis that are derived of it: ut as, Hodie to-day, quotidie daily, pridie the day before, postridie the day after: item also quare wherefore, quadere for what cause, eare therefore, et and si qua sunt similia if there be any thing of the like sort.

Et item and also secundæ personæ singulares the second persons singular secundæ conjugationis of the second conjugation: ut as, Doce teach, move move.

Etiā also monosyllaba monosyllables in e ending in e producuntur are made long: ut as, me me, te thee, se himself or themselves; præter except conjunctiones encliticas the enclitical conjunctions, que and, ne whether, ve or.

Quin et and moreover adverbia adverbs in e ending in e, deducta derived ab adjectivis from adjectives secundæ declinationis of the second declension, habent have e the letter e longum long: ut as, Pulchrè beautifully, doctè learnedly, valdè pro for validè, mightily.

Quibus to which the adverbs fermè et and ferè almost accedunt are added; tamen yet bene well, et and malè ill, omnino corripuntur are always made short.

Postremò lastly quæ such words as scribuntur are written à Græcis per η with the Greek letter η or long e, producuntur are long naturâ by nature, cujuscunque fuerint castûs of whatever case they are, generis gender, aut or numeri number: ut as, Lethe the river so called, Anchise a proper name, cete whales, Tempe the name of a pleasant valley in Thessaly.

V. Finita i words ending in i longa sunt are long: ut as, Domini Lords, magistri masters, amari to be loved.

Præter except mihi to me, tibi to thee, sibi to himself or themselves, ubi where, ibi there, quæ which words sunt are communia common.

Verò but nisi except et and quasi as if corripuntur are made short.

Cujus etiam sortis *of which sort likewise sunt are* dativi *the dative* et *and* vocativi *the vocative* cases Græcorum *of Greek words*, quorum genitivus singularis *the genitive case singular of which words* exit *endeth in* o breve *in os a short termination*: ut *as*, dativi *the dative* cases Minoidi, Palladi, Phyllidi; vocativi *the vocative* cases Alexi, Amarylli, Daphni, *all proper names*.

VI. Finita *l words ending in l* corripuntur *are made short*: ut *as*, Animal *an animal*, Annibal *a proper name*, mel *honey*, pugil *a champion*, consul *a consul*.

Præter *except the words* nil, contractum *contracted à* of nihil *nothing*, sal *salt*, et *and* sol *the sun*.

Et *and* Hebræa quædam *certain Hebrew words* in el ending in el: ut *as* Michael, Gabriel, Raphael, *the names of ungsels*, Daniel *the name of a prophet*.

VII. Finita *n words ending in n* productuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, Pæan *a name of Apollo*, Hymen *the god of marriage*, quin *but*, Xenophon *a proper name*, non *not*, dæmon *the devil*.

Excipe *except* forsán forsitan *perhaps*, an *whether*, tamen *yet*, attamen *but yet*, veruntamen *nevertheless*, et *and* in the preposition in.

Et his *and to these* accedunt *are added* illæ voces *those words* quæ *which* patiuntur *suffer* Apocopen *the figure Apocope*: ut *as*, men' *what me?* viden' *do you see?* audin' *do you hear?* etiam *also* exin *from henceforth*, subin *now and then*, dein *afterwards*, proin *therefore*.

In an quoque *words also ending in an à* nominativis *from nominative cases* in a ending in a: ut *as*, nominativo *in the nominative case* Iphigenia, Ægina, accusativo *in the accusative case* Iphigenian, Æginan, *proper names of women*: Nam for in an words ending in an à nominativis *from nominative cases* in as ending in as productuntur *are made long*: ut *as*, nominativo *in the nominative case* Æneas, Marsyas; accusativo *in the accusative case* Ænean, Marsyan, *proper names*.

Item *also* nomina *nouns* in en ending in en, quorum genitivus *whose genitive case* habet *hath* inis *correptum made short*; ut *as*, Carmen *a poem*, crimen *a fault*, pecten

pecten a comb, tibicen a player on the flute, make inis in the genitive case.

Quædam etiam *some nouns also*, in in per i ending in in with an i, ut *as, Alexin; et and in yn per y ending in yn with a y: ut as, Ityn, both proper names.*

Græca etiam *Greek words also in on ending in on per o parvum with little o, cujuscunque fuerint casûs of whatever case they be; ut as, Nominativo in the nominative case Ilion the city Troy, Pelion a hill in Thessaly; accusativo in the accusative case, Caucason the name of a mountain, Pylon the name of a town.*

VIII. O finita *words ending in o communia sunt are common: ut as, Dico I say, virgo a virgin, porrò more-over. Sic so docendo in teaching, legendo in reading, et alia gerundia and other gerunds in do ending in do.*

Sed but obliqui casus *oblique cases in o ending in o semper always producantur are made long; ut as, dative in the dative case, domino to a lord or master, servo to a servant; ablativo in the ablative case, templo from the temple, damno with loss.*

Et and adverbia *adverbs derivata derived ab adjectivis from adjectives: ut as, tantò by so much, quantò by how much, liquidò clearly, falsò falsely, primò first, manifestò manifestly, &c. and so forth, præter except sedulò diligently, mutuò mutually, crebrò frequently, quæ which words sunt are communia common.*

Cæterum but modò *now or only, et and quomodo how, semper always corripuntur are made short.*

Quoque likewise, citò *soon, ut et as also ambo both, duo two, ego I, atque and homo a man or woman, vix leguntur producta are scarcely ever read long.*

Tamen however monosyllaba *monosyllables in o ending in o producantur are made long: ut as, Do I give, sto I stand.*

Item also Græca *Greek words per w with great o, cujusmodi fuerint casûs of whatever case they are; ut as, nominativo in the nominative case, Sappho, Dido; genitivo in the genitive case, Androgeo, Apollo; accusativo in the accusative case, Atho, Apollo, all proper names*

names. Sic et and so likewise ergo (when put) pro causâ for the sake of.

IX. Finita *r* words ending in *r* corripuntur are made short: ut as, Cæsar a proper name, per by, vir a man, uxor a wife, turtur a turtle.

Etiam these words also producuntur are made long: far bread corn, Lar an household god, Nar the river so called, ver the spring, fur a thief, cur why: quoque also par equal to or like cum compositis with its compounds: ut as, Compar a companion, impar unequal, dispar unlike.

Græca etiam also Greek words in *er* ending in *er* quæ which illis among them desinunt end in *η* in the long *e* before *r*: ut as, Aër the air, crater a cup, character a mark or sign, æther the sky, soter a deliverer: præter except pater a father, et and mater a mother, quæ which apud Latinos with Latin authors habent have ultimam the last syllable brevem short.

X. Finita *s* words ending in *s* habent have pares terminations the like terminations cum numero with the number vocalium of the vowels; nempe namely, as, es, is, os, us.

1. AS finita words ending in *as* producuntur are made long: ut as, amas thou lovest, musas the muses, majestās majesty, bonitas goodness.

Præter except Græca some Greek words, quorum genitivus singularis whose genitive case singular exit in dos endeth in dos; ut as, Arcas, Pallas, proper names, genitivo in the genitive case, Arcados, Pallados.

Et also præter except accusativos plurales the accusative cases plural nominum crescentium of nouns increasing: ut as, Heros heroos a hero, Phyllis Phyllidos a proper name, accusativo plurali in the accusative plural, heroas, Phyllidas.

2. Finita *es* words ending in *es* longa sunt are long: ut as, Anchises the father of Æneas, sedes thou sittest, doces thou teachest, patres fathers.

Nomina in *es* nouns ending in *es* tertiæ inflexionis of the

the third declension, quæ which nouns corripuiunt make short penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing, excipiuntur are excepted; ut as, miles a soldier, seges standing corn, dives rich; sed butaries a ram, abies a fir-tree, paries the wall of a house, Ceres the goddess of corn; et and pes a foot, unà cum compositis together with its compounds; ut as, bipes having two feet, tripes having three, longa sunt are long.

Quoque also es thou art, à from sum I am, unà cum compositis together with its compounds, corripitur is made short: ut as, potes thou art able, ades thou art present, prodes thou profitest, obes thou hinderest; quibus to which penès in the power of potest may adjungi be added.

Item also neutra words of the neuter gender, et and nominativi plurales the nominative cases plural Græcorum of certain Greek words: ut as, hippomanes a raging humour in mares, cacoëthes an ill habit, Cyclopes giants so called, Naïdes fairies haunting rivers and fountains.

3. *Finita is words ending in is brevia sunt are short: ut as, Paris a proper name, panis bread, tristis sorrowful, hilaris merry.*

Excipe except obliquos casus plurales the oblique cases plural in is ending in is, qui which producuntur are made long; ut as, musis the dative and ablative case plural à of musa a muse or song, mensis, à of mensa, a table, dominis lords, templis temples, et and quīs pro for quibus whom.

Item also producentia such words as make long penultimam the last syllable save one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing: ut as, Samnis a Samnite, Salamis an isle by Athens, genitivo in the genitive case, Samnitis, Salaminis.

Adde huc add to this place quæ such words as desinunt in is end in is, contracta being contracted ex eis from the diphthong eis, sive Græca whether they be Greek sive or Latina Latin, cujuscunque numeri of whatever number aut or casus case fuerint they may be; ut as, Simois a river in Troy, Pyrois one of the horses of the sun, partis parts, omnis all; e from the words Simoeis, Pyroeis, parteis, omneis, being taken away.

Et item and also omnia monosyllaba all monosyllables: ut *as*, vis strength, lis strife; præter except is he, et and quis who, nominativos in the nominative case, et and bis twice.

Istis to these accedunt are added secundæ personæ singulares the second person singular verborum of verbs in is ending in is, quorum secundæ personæ plurales whose second persons plural desinunt in itis end in itis, penultimâ the last syllable save one productâ being made long: unâ cum futuris together with the future tenses optativi of the optative (or the potential) mood in ris ending in ris: ut *as*, audis thou hearest, velis thou mayest be willing, dederis thou shalt give, pluraliter in the plural number auditis, velitis, dederitis.

4. Os finita words ending in os producuntur are made long: ut *as*, honos honour, nepos a nephew, dominos lords, servos servants.

Præter except compos he that hath ability or power in something, impos that is unable, or not having power, et and os ossis a bone.

Et and Græca Greek words per o parvum with little o: ut *as*, Delos an isle in the Ægean sea, chaos a confused heap of all things; Pallados the genitive case of Pallas Minerva, Phyllidos the genitive case of Phyllis a proper name.

5. Us finita words ending in us corripuntur are made short: ut *as*, famulus a man-servant, regius royal, tempus time, amamus we love.

Producentia words that make long penultimam the last syllable but one genitivi crescentis of the genitive case increasing excipiuntur are excepted; ut *as*, salus health, tellus the earth, genitivo in the genitive case salutis, telluris.

Etiam also omnes voces all words quartæ inflexionis of the fourth declension in us ending in us sunt longæ are long, præter except nominativum the nominative et and vocativum the vocative case singulares in the singular number; ut *as*, genitivo singulari in the genitive case singular, manûs of a hand, nominativo, accusativo, vocativo

tivo plurali in the nominative, accusative, and vocative cases plural manus hands.

Etiam also monosyllaba monosyllables accedunt are added his to these: ut as, crus the leg from the knee to the ankle, thus frankincense, mus a mouse, sus a sow.

Et item and also Græca Greek words per ovs diphthongum ending with the diphthong ous, cujuscunque fuerint castus of whatever case they be: ut as, nominativo in the nominative case, Panthus, Melampus, proper names; genitivo in the genitive case, Sapphus, Clîus, proper names: atque and nomen the name Iesus Jesus venerandum to be revered piis cunctis by all godly people.

XI. Postremò lastly, u finita omnia all words ending in u producuntur are made long: ut as, manu the ablative case of manus u hand, genu a knee, amatu to be loved, diu a long time.

SUPPLEMENT.

OF GRAMMATICAL FIGURES. !!

I. IN ETYMOLOGY.

1. *APOCOPE* takes away from the end of words, to which *Paragoge* adds: as *ingent, men', satin'*; *dicier*; for *ingenii, méne, satisne*; *dici*.

2. *Syncope* takes away from the middle of words; as *aspris, cœlicolúm, currúm, dedúm, dixti, surrexe*; for *asperis, cœlicolarum, curruum, deorum, dixisti, surrexisse*.

3. *Epenthesis* inserts in the middle of words: as *induperator, alituum, cœlituum, relligio, repperit*: for *imperator, alitum, cœlitum, religio, reperit*.

4. *Prosthesis* adds to the beginning of a word, from which *Aphæresis* takes away: as *gnatus, tetuli*; —'st, *ruit, conia*; for *natus, tuli*; *est, eruit, ciconia*.

5. *Antithesis* alters a letter; *Metathesis* displaces or transposes it: as *olli, faciundum, optumus, Lybia*; for *illi, faciendum, optimus, Libya*.

6. *Archaismus* is the old way of writing: as *aulai, anuis*

anuis, curru, dié, omneis or omnis, ornati, senati, vids; for *aulæ, anús, currui, diei, omnes, ornatús, senatús, viæ*. In some old authors, *neuter, nullus, solus, totus*, have the form of *bonus* in the genitive and dative.

7. *Hellenismus* is an imitation of the Greek form: as *Helene, heroas, Pallados*; for *Helena, heroes, Palladis*.

II. IN SYNTAX.

There are four general forms in Syntax: *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasmus*, *Enallage*, *Hyperbaton*.

ELLIPSIS.

Ellipsis, properly so called, is the omission of some word, necessary to complete the sense: as *Ita aiunt*, Ter. *Sed reddere posse negabat*, Vir. *Egomet continuo mecum*, Ter. *Paucis te volo*, Id. *Saturno rege*, Ov. Here are understood, *homines, se, cogitabam, verbis alloqui, existente*.

To the *ELLIPSIS* belong the following figures:

Apposition is when two nouns are put in the same case: as *Urbs Roma*, i. e. *existens, vel quæ est Roma*.

Asyndeton omits the conjunctions: as *Ferte citi flammæ, date tela, impellite remos*, Vir.

Syllepsis is when one adjective, or verb, agrees with two or more substantives of different genders, or numbers, in that which is most worthy: as *Pater mihi et mater, mortui sunt*, Ter. Sometimes the preposition *cum*, with an ablative, serves as a nominative: as *Dux hostium cum urbe Valentid et exercitu* (i. e. *dux, et urbs Valentia et exercitus*) *deleti*, Sal. *Divellimur inde Iphitus et Pelias mecum*, i. e. *et ego*, Vir.

Zeugma is when the adjective, or verb, agrees with the nearer substantive, without regard to the worthier gender, or person: as *Et genus et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior alqd est*, Hor.

Prolepsis is when the parts are mentioned after the whole, though differing from it in number or person, without repeating the verb or adjective: as *Exercitus hostium duo, alter ab urbe, alter à Galliâ, obstant*, Sal. *Ego vaculando, ille verberando, usque ambo defessi sumus*, Ter.
for,

for, *Exercitus hostium duo obstant, alter ab urbe obstat, alter à Gallia obstat. Usque ambo defessi sumus, ego defessus sum vapulando, ille defessus est verberando.*

The grammatical Synecdoche is, when that which belongs to a part is ascribed to the whole, κατὰ, or secundum, being understood: as *Vultum caligine tectus*, Ov.

PLEONASMUS.

A *Pleonasmus*, properly so called, is a redundancy of one or more words in a sentence: as *Sic ore locuta est*, Vir. *Fac me ut sciam*, Ter. *Postquam primus amor deceptam morte fefellit*, Vir. *Magis beator*, Vir. *Nisi si*, Ov.

To the *PLEONASMUS* belong the following figures:

Parecon adds an unnecessary particle to a word: as *adesdum, egomet, hicce, quisnam, tute, videsis.*

Polysyndeton uses superfluous conjunctions copulative: as *Unà Eurisque Notusque ruunt, creberque procellis Africus*, Vir.

Hendyadis expresses one thing, as if it were two: as *Pateris libamus et auro*, Vir. i. e. *pateris aureis.*

Periphrasis uses many words to express one thing: as *Teneri fœtus ovium*, Vir. i. e. *agni.*

ENALLAGE.

Enallage, properly so called, changes the genders, numbers, persons, moods, and tenses: as, *Ego quoque unà pereo, quod mihi est charius*, i. e. *qui mihi sum charior*, Ter. *Romanus victor erat*, i. e. *Romani victores erant*, Liv. *Fidelem haud fermè mulieri invenias virum*, i. e. *quis inveniat*, Ter. *Quid non mortalia pectora cogis, auri sacra fames*, i. e. *cogit auri fames*, Vir. *Ubi socordiae te tradideris, nequequam deos implores*, i. e. *implorabis*, Sal. *Si hic sis, aliter sentias*, i. e. *esses, sentires*, Ter.

To *ENALLAGE* belong the following figures:

Antimeria, puts one part of speech for another: as *Siquid in Flacco (i. e. me) est*, Hor. *Suos*, i. e. *propitios habuere deos*, Ov. *Nostrum illud vivere triste*, i. e. *vita*, Pers. *Invitus feci*, i. e. *invitè*, Ter. *Sic vita erat*, i. e. *talis*, Id. *O mihi sola mei super Astyanactis imago*, i. e. *superstes*, Vir.

Synthesis is when a verb, or adjective, agrees not in construction, but sense: as *turba*, i. e. *multi homines, ruunt*, Ov. *Subeunt Tegeæa juventus auxilio tardi*, i. e. *juvenes*, Stat.

Anacolouthon is when the following and preceding clauses do not agree: as *Nam nos omnes, quibus est ali cunde aliquis objectus labos, omne quod est interea tem pus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est*, Ter. But this figure is by no means to be imitated.

Hellenismus imitates the Greek form: as *Sensit me dios delapsus Achivos*, i. e. *se delapsus fuisse*, Vir. *Abstine irarum*, i. e. *ab iris*, Hor.

Archaismus is the old way of writing: *Operam abu titur*, Ter. *Nocere hominem*, Plaut.

HYPERBATON.

Hyperbaton, properly so called, is too long a paren thesis, or when the verb stands at too great a distance from the nominative case: as,

*Interea reges (ingenti mole Latinus
Quadrijugo vehitur curru, cui tempora circum
Aurati bis sex radii fulgentia cingunt,
Solis avi specimen; bigis it Turnus in albis,
Bina manu lato crispans hastilia ferro;
Hinc pater Æneas, Romanæ stirpis origo,
Sidereo flagrans clypeo et cælestibus armis,
Et juxtà Ascanius, magnæ spes altera Romæ,)
Procedunt castris.* Vir. *Æn.*

To the *HYPERBATON* belong the following figures:

Anastrophe puts a word after, which ought to go be fore: as *Quæ omnia fecit lucri*, i. e. *lucrificet*, Nep. *Faciam tamen satis tibi*, i. e. *satisfaciam*, Cic. *I præ, sequar*, i. e. *præi*, Ter.

Hysteron proteron puts that first which is last in sense: as *Valet atque vivit*, Ter. *Moriumur, et in media arma ruamus*, Vir.

Hypallage is a mutual change of cases: as *Dare clas sibus Austros*, i. e. *classes Austris*, Vir. *In nova fert animus mutatas discere formas corpora*, i. e. *corpora mutata in novas formas*, Ov. Synchysia

Synchysis is a confused placing of words: as *Namque pila tippis inimicum et ludere crudis*, Hor. *Vos et Scyllæam rabiem, penitusque sonantes accëstis scopulos*, Vir.

Tmesis divides a compound word, and puts some other between the parts: as *Per mihi gratum feceris*, i. e. *pergratum*, Cic. *Septem subjecta trioni gens*, i. e. *septemtrioni*, Vir.

Parenthesis interrupts a sentence by inserting some clause in the middle of it: as *Tityre, dum redeo (brevis est via), pascere capellas*, Vir.

III. IN PROSODY.

Synalæpha cuts off a vowel or diphthong at the end of a word, the next word beginning with a vowel or diphthong: as

Sērā nī | mīs vīt' | ēst||crāsīmā | vīv' hōdī | ē. Mart.

Ah, heu, hei, io, O, proh, væ, are never cut off.

Note also, long vowels and diphthongs are sometimes made common before another vowel or diphthong, after the manner of the Greek: as

Insulæ Iōniæ.—Cāstāncæ lārcidæ.—Rhōdopēidæ arcēs. Vir.

Ecthipsis cuts off *m* and its preceding vowel, the next word beginning with a vowel: as

Mōnstr' hōr|rēnd' in|fōrm' in|gēns cū|hūmēn ā|dēnptūm.

for *monstrum, horrendum, informe*, Vir.

The old Roman writers cut off *s* in the same manner, but are not to be imitated therein.

Note, the **Synalæpha** and **Ecthipsis** are sometimes used at the end of a verse, the next verse beginning with a vowel, as

—*ignari hominumque locorumque*

Erramus.

—*turres ac tecta Latinorum*

Ardua cernebant.

Virg.

Systole shortens a long syllable: as *Orion, palūs, tulērunt*, for *Ōrion, palūs, tulērunt*.

Diastole lengthens a short syllable: as *naufrāgia, Priamides*; for *naufrāgia, Priamides*.

Syncretism

Synæresis contracts two syllables into one : as *dī*, *deīnde*, *eōdem*, *īdem*, and many others ; for *dīi*, *deīnde*, *eodem*, *iīdem*.

Diæresis dissolves a syllable into two : as *aulāi*, *evolūisse*, *Orphēus*, *sylūæ* ; for *aulæ*, *evolūisse*, *Orpheus*, *sylvæ*.

Cæsura is when the last syllable of a word begins a new foot ; and commonly takes place after the first, second, third, or fourth feet ; as

Pectori|bus inhi|ans spi|rantia | consulit | exta, Vir.

Sometimes a short syllable is made long by *Cæsura* : as *bus* in *pectoribus* of the above verse.

EXPLANATION OF THE ROMAN CALENDAR.

1. The Romans dated by Calends, Nones, and Ides.
2. The Calends are the 1st day of every month.
3. The Nones are the 7th of four months, i. e. March, May, July, October, and the 5th of all the rest.
4. The Ides are always eight days after the Nones ; and therefore fall on the 15th of those four months, and on the 13th of the rest.
5. The Romans reckoned backwards ; and therefore all the days from the Ides of any month are said to be so many days before the Calends of the next ; as, for instance, the 20th of January is the 13^o Cal. Feb. i. e. thirteen days before the Calends of February.

To turn ROMAN TIME into ENGLISH TIME.

Subtract the Roman numeral from ours, adding 1 in Nones and Ides, and 2 in Calends ; and the difference is our date : as 13^o Cal. Feb. is thus known : 13 taken from 31 (the number of days in January) leaves 18, add 2 = 20, i. e. the 20th day of January. Again, 4^o Id. Jan. thus : 4 from 13 (the day on which the Ides of this month fall) leaves 9, add 1 = 10, i. e. the 10th of January. Again, 4^o Non. Jan. thus : 4 from 5 (the day on which the Nones fall) leaves 1, add 1 = 2, i. e. the 2d day of January.

Note, the 2 is added in the account of Calends, because the 1st day of the following month and the current day are included.

Note also, that in leap year, the 24th and 25th of February were called 6^o Cal. Martii ; and therefore that year was called bissextile.

Note lastly, that English time is turned into Roman time in the same manner, *mutatis mutandis*.







8

17/11

17

C. M.

ing

